

# IN BONDAGE?



**In Bondage?**

Dr. El-Azar du Plessis

---

Published by:

© 2017

First edition 2017

Cover designed by Utilisoft

Editing & Formatting

Sindi du Plessis

All Scripture quotations from E-Sword

© All copy rights reserved

---

---

## Table of Content

Bondage? We were never in bondage to any man! .....	6
In Captivity .....	9
Part 1 Beware of the Chaldeans .....	11
In Bondage .....	30
Deliverance .....	39
Daily Bread .....	49
God's Communion .....	55
Part 2 Hardness of the Heart .....	64
Unable To Take It In .....	71
Abraham & Sarah .....	83
Prayer & Fasting .....	84
Faith .....	88
Fasting & Prayer .....	92
The Vision .....	112
The Prophet's Commission .....	116
The Message of Paul .....	121
Part 3 Be Aware of your Spirit, Soul & Body .....	137
Understanding Spiritual Being .....	139
Understanding The Soul .....	146
It Is A Journey Of SANCTIFICATION .....	157
Part 4 Be Aware of your Soul Ties .....	171
Ungodly Soul Ties .....	176
Godly Soul Ties .....	181
How Soul Ties Are Formed .....	186
Breaking Soul Ties .....	187

---

---

Activating The Breaking Of A “Soul Tie” .....	192
DNA TIES .....	196
Breaking DNA Ties .....	210
Part 5 The Believer’s Battle.....	215
The Good News .....	221
Sin Warring Against Mind .....	231
Disease.....	237
New Nature .....	249
Sanctification .....	251
Higher Law.....	264
Free vs Freed .....	267
My Answer To The Impossible Life.....	272

---

---

## Foreword The Carpenter’s Son

During Jesus’ time of Ministry on earth, He also went back to His own home town, Nazareth and taught there in the synagogue. Notwithstanding the fact that they were astonished about His wisdom, they rejected His teachings.

### Why?

*And when he was come into his own country, he taught them in their synagogue, insomuch that they were astonished, and said, Whence hath this man this wisdom, and these mighty works?*

**Matthew 13:54 KJV**

They rejected His teachings because they recognized Him as the carpenter’s son: **“is this not the son of Joseph, the carpenter?”**

*<sup>53-54</sup> When Jesus had finished giving these illustrations, he returned to his hometown, Nazareth in Galilee, and taught there in the synagogue and astonished everyone with his wisdom and his miracles. <sup>55</sup> “How is this possible?” the people exclaimed. “He’s just a carpenter’s son, and we know Mary his mother and his brothers—James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas. <sup>56</sup> And his sisters—they all live here. How can he be so great?” <sup>57</sup> And they became angry with him! **Matthew 13:53-57 TLB***

They did not see Him as Yahshua HaMashiach, but as the son of Joseph the carpenter. And because of that – He could not do many mighty works there because of their unbelief!

*And he did **not do many mighty works there because of their unbelief.** **Matthew 13:58 KJV***

---

---

ARE YOU PREPARED TO LISTEN TO THE CARPENTER'S SON?

---

I am only His **vessel** – a **messenger** – who freely have received and freely give  
(Matthew 10:8).

**And this is what He – Yahshua HaMashiach is saying!**

## Bondage? We were never in bondage to any man!

Said the Jewish people to Jesus when He was trying to explain to them that He was from above, they were in the world and that they would die in their sin if they did not believe in Him (John 8:23-24).

Then Jesus told the Jews whom believed in Him, If ye continue in My word, then are ye **My disciples** indeed; and ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free (John 8:31-32).

*They answered him, We be Abraham's seed, and were never in bondage to any man: how sayest thou, Ye shall be made free? **John 8:33 KJV***

Jesus was not talking to a group of unbelievers, but to disciples – see John 8:31 and was trying to tell them He had come to set them free if they'd just believe in Him. Their arrogance blinded them – they were in bondage for 430 years in Egypt when Moses came and led them to the Promised Land. They also were in slavery for another 70 years and their 12 tribes were divided into two kingdoms, the Northern and Southern Kingdoms. As they were talking to Jesus, they were under the Roman Emperor's rule. Still they answer Jesus: "we were never in bondage to any man".

We were never in bondage to any man, I heard you saying: "who are in **debt**, who has an **incurable disease** or is chronically sick, living constantly in **fear**, or

never **forgave** that person who hurt you so much that you have lived your whole life far in **bitterness** and **guilt**?"

Does this sound familiar to you? Just look how Jesus responded.

*Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin. 35 And the servant abideth not in the house for ever: but the Son abideth ever. 36 If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed. 37 I know that ye are Abraham's seed; but ye seek to kill me, because my word hath no place in you. 38 I speak that which I have seen with my Father: and ye do that which ye have seen with your father. 39 They answered and said unto him, Abraham is our father. Jesus saith unto them, If ye were Abraham's children, ye would do the works of Abraham. **John 8:34-39 KJV***

Jesus was saying that whosoever commits sin, is the servant of sin - **henceforth you are in bondage and need deliverance!** Notice, these were believers to whom Jesus was talking to and I will prove it further to you - just hold on! But Jesus is not yet finished with them;

- He said that He knew that they were from Abraham's seed (*referring to believers*), but that they did not do what believers were supposed to do and instead, they were only trying to kill Him.
- Similar today - we attend church every Sunday and from Monday to Saturday, we operate under a different voice, the language of the world where the dog-eats-dog rules apply.

Finally, Jesus asked them why they did not understand His speech ( or voice / language)?

*Why do ye not understand my speech? even because ye cannot hear my word. **John 8:43***

My only conclusion is this - Jesus said that their father was the devil.

*Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and **abode not in the truth** because there is no **truth in him**. When he **speaketh a lie**, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar and the **father of it. John 8:44***

These are very hard words indeed.

**Whenever you are not in the truth it means you are listening to a different voice / language. - The conclusion is - that voice must be the voice of the father of all lies, because that is the only language he can speak. There simply is no truth in any other voice than the voice of the Shepherd!**

Paul is saying in 1 Corinthians that there are many types of voices in the world and all of them are significant.

*There are, it may be, so many kinds of voices in the world, and none of them is without signification. **1 Corinthians 14:10 KJV***

In the TLB translation it says: *"I suppose that there are hundreds of different languages in the world, and all are excellent for those who understand them, 11 but to me they mean nothing. A person talking to me in one of these languages will be a stranger to me and I will be a stranger to him. 12 Since you are so anxious to have special gifts from the Holy Spirit, ask him for the very best, for those that will be of real help to the whole church"* **Corinthians 14:10-12 TLB.**

This is profound and I pray with my whole heart that the Ruach HaKodesh (Holy Spirit) will reveal this truth to you today. Take a moment to meditate on these words. Ask the Lord what it means and that He may reveal to you what you need to be freed.

## In Captivity

God is saying in His Word that MY people are in captivity because of a lack of knowledge. God is not referring to the unbelievers (*as we shall see much clearer later on*), but to His people – the believers.

*Therefore my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge. **Isaiah 5:13a KJV***

Because of this lack of knowledge, *hell enlarged, and opened up without measure: and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoice, shall descend into it. (Isaiah 5:14)*. These are very hard words, but they are the truth. God is not here to condemn you, neither am I. It is God's desire and His heart to set you free. Open your heart to the Holy Spirit who draws you ( *"No one is able to come to Me unless the Father Who sent Me attracts and draws him and gives him the desire to come to Me, and then I will raise him up from the dead at the last day - John 6:44 AMP*) into the truth and acknowledge (*That the communication of thy faith may become effectual by the **acknowledging** of every good thing which is in you in Christ Jesus Philemon 1:6*) it – so that the truth can set you free (John 8:32). In meekness, I am giving these instructions under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit unto you. I am praying that the Ruach HaKodesh where needed will lead you to repentance to the acknowledging of the truth.

*And the servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all men, apt to teach, patient, 25 **In meekness instructing** those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them **repentance to the acknowledging of the truth. 2 Timothy 2:24 KJV***

This is good news, if you submit to God, asking Him to reveal to you all that is hidden, and you repent to the acknowledging of the truth, you shall recover yourself out of the snare of the devil who has taken you captive by him at his will.

*And that they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will. **2 Timothy 2:26 KJV***



## Part 1 Beware of the Chaldeans

We just saw in the afore-mentioned scriptures that we are in bondage and held captive because of a lack of knowledge. We also saw that it is God's desire that we recover ourselves out of the snares of the devil (*who are taken captive by him at his will*).

Let me first enlighten your understanding on how our enemy is at work and why the Bible is telling us to recover yourselves out of the snare of the devil. What is it that we as born-again believers must beware of?

### THE CHALDEANS

We have not even heard of the Chaldeans! Are you aware that we are in a spiritual war, a second by second battle each and every day of our lives without a break? It does not matter if you are aware of this or not, acknowledge it, or just ignoring it. There is a spiritual battle going on and Satan is accusing us day and night before our God (*And I heard a loud voice in heaven, saying, "Now the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ have come, for the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God. Revelation 12:10 ASV*).

We are in the midst of the spiritual battle and the believers are constantly under attack.

*For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.*

### **Ephesians 6:12 KJV**

Everything that we experience in our lives on earth is the result of a physical manifestation of a declaration in the spiritual realm. In the book of Acts, Paul is speaking to the people in Antioch in Pisidia and he **warns** the people to **beware** that something might come upon them.

*Beware therefore, lest that come upon you, which is spoken of in the prophets; Acts 13:40 KJV*

Equally important is what Paul said just before the warning! Paul told them that no one can have any right standing before God our Lord through the Law of Moses (*remember, all that they knew was the law and obedience to the law*). And now Paul was telling them that the law can't do anything for you, it is only Jesus. Through Jesus, we proclaim forgiveness of sins and it is through Jesus that you get your right standing before God!

*"Therefore, brothers and sisters, know this: Through Jesus, we proclaim forgiveness of sins to you. From all those sins from which you couldn't be put in right relationship with God through Moses' Law, <sup>39</sup>through Jesus everyone who believes is put in right relationship with God. <sup>40</sup>Take care that the prophets' words don't apply to you: Acts 13: 38 AMPC*

Paul ended this message in verse 40 by warning the people: *"Take care that the prophet's words don't apply to you!"* Some of the other translations use the words *"be careful"* and *"don't take this lightly"*. Because you will not even

believe when you hear it announced, says Paul in the TLB, **even if someone clearly describing it in detail to you, still you will not believe it** (AMPC).

*Oh, be careful! Don't let the prophets' words apply to you. For they said,<sup>41</sup> 'Look and perish, you despisers of the truth, for I am doing something in your day—something that you **won't believe when you hear it announced.**'"* **Acts 13:40 TLB**

*Take care, therefore, lest there come upon you what is spoken in the prophets: <sup>41</sup>Look, you scoffers and scorers, and marvel and perish and vanish away; for I am doing a deed in your days, a deed which **you will never have confidence in or believe, [even] if someone clearly describing it in detail**] declares it to you.* **Acts 13:40 AMPC [Habakkuk 1:5]**

*"Don't take this lightly. You don't want the prophet's sermon to describe you: Watch out, cynics; Look hard—watch your world fall to pieces. I'm doing something right before your eyes that **you won't believe, though it's staring you in the face.**"* **Acts 13:40 MSG**

As Paul started this message, my dear brothers, and sister – **BEWARE!** I am here to warn you today – Beware! In the Message Bible at the end of verse 41 we can see that Paul is quoting from the Prophet, Habakkuk Chapter 1.

*Behold ye among the heathen, and regard, and wonder marvellously: for I will work a work in your days, which ye will not believe, though it be told you.* **Habakkuk 1:5 KJV**

The prophet is saying that the enemy, the god of this world will blind the minds of people and you will not see nor believe when this message is coming to you.

*In whom the **god of this world hath blinded** the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.*

**2 Corinthians 4:4 KJV**

The prophet Habakkuk warns us to look out, beware of the Chaldeans!

*Watch out! For I am bringing in the Chaldeans, that cruel and impetuous people, who sweep across the earth dispossessing people from homes not their own.* **Habakkuk 1:6 ISV**

*The GNB version says: "I am bringing the Babylonians to power, those fierce, restless people. They are marching out across the world to conquer other lands"* **Habakkuk 1:6 GNB.**

Throughout the Old Testament the Bible teaches us about all the different Tyron Kings. Each of them represented a demonic force that is at work today that we as believers have to conquer. The Exhaustive *Dictionary of Bible Names* define Chaldeans as:

**"it was demons (root = to lay waste, to destroy). Wanderers"**

So Paul, quoting from the book of Habakkuk warned the brothers and sisters to beware of the work of the enemy - "demons" - **enemies who are coming and destroying the people of God.**

*For, lo, I raise up the Chaldeans, that bitter and hasty nation, which shall march through the breadth of the land, to possess the dwelling-places that are not theirs.* **Habakkuk1:6 KJV**

The skeptics of that time when Paul brought that message were saying: "you must be out of your mind - all the Chaldeans were destroyed 539 BC (*Jeremiah*



50 and 51 says that there are none of them left). There aren't any Chaldeans left! In the very same way the believers today are saying: **"there are no demons anymore"** or **"I am a believer, they can't do anything to me"**. **You have to be out of your mind. This message is not for me? And this is exactly what scripture is warning you about today:**

*a deed which you will never have confidence in or believe, [even] if someone clearly describing it in detail] declares it to you.*

**Acts 13:41b AMPC**

There are currently a lot of confusion in the Body of Christ about the words **possess, oppress** and **depress**. They are all the same thing, it does not have anything to do with ownership, but is about the issue of **"getting control over you"**. It does not matter if a demon is inside of you or standing on Mount Zion – what matters is if you are listening to his voice!

*There are, it may be, so many kinds of voices in the world, and none of them is without signification. 1 Corinthians 14:10 KJV*

Paul is saying in Corinthians that there are many voices in the world and all of them do have a meaning –which one are you listening to? The TLB translation states:

*I suppose that there are hundreds of different languages in the world, and all are excellent for those who understand them, <sup>11</sup> but to me they mean nothing. A person talking to me in one of these languages will be a stranger to me and I will be a stranger to him. <sup>12</sup> Since you are so anxious to have special gifts from the Holy Spirit, ask him for the very best, for those that will be of real help to the whole church. 1 Corinthians 14:10 TLB*

This is profound – Paul is saying that all these languages/voices are excellent for those who understand it. BUT to him, they mean nothing because he was only tuned into the Holy Spirit, the Ruach HaKodesh. This was the meaning of Paul's message in Acts 13 when he was referring to the prophet Habakkuk – **"beware of the demons"** – beware of the voice coming from them, because it is through these voices that you yield yourself and become a slave!

*Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness? Romans 6:16 KJV*

**They ("demons") are looking for dwelling places that do not belong to them. They are thieves and steal and murder and Satan is the father of all lies!**

*Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.*

**John 8:44 KJV**

When we see scriptures talking about Satan – it refers to the works of Satan. He is not omnipresent like God. God is always, simultaneously everywhere at all time and at all places. But Satan can only be at one place at a time, therefore he is doing his works through his army of demons. When Jesus referred in Luke to the woman with a spirit of infirmity, bound by Satan – she was bound by a demon for 18 years. We will come back to this scripture again, but be aware of fact that this woman was a daughter of Abraham – meaning a believer! She was bound by a demon for 18 years and Jesus came to free her.

*And ought not this woman, being a **daughter of Abraham**, whom **Satan hath bound**, lo, these **eighteen years**, be loosed from this bond on the sabbath day? **Luke 13:16b KJV***

I believe you will agree if you are walking and listening to the Holy Spirit that the message is clear – Beware! Beware of the works of the devil in your life!

Let us now look at three very important things about the workings of these demons.

### THEY ARE THIEVES

They are thieves trying to possess dwelling-places that are not theirs! During the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, He disarmed all the works of Satan – henceforth the devil can't do anything. But it is his works and influence in our lives that can bring us into bondage, just like the woman living with an infirmity spirit for 18 years. Satan has an army of demons that are doing his works and he binds us through his demons.

*He disarmed the rulers and authorities and put them to open shame, by triumphing over them in him. **Colossians 2:15 KJV***

To further illustrate this point that they are thieves, Ps 83 indicates that the enemy makes a tumult and consulted against people that the name of Israel (God's people - believers) may be no more in remembrance. Born again believers are under an attack. They are not after the non-believers – why? They already belong to Satan!

*Keep not thou silence, O God: hold not thy peace, and be not still, O God. 2 For, lo, thine enemies make a tumult: and they that*

*hate thee have lifted up the head. 3 They have taken crafty counsel against thy people, and consulted against thy hidden ones. 4 They have said, Come, and let us cut them off from being a nation; that the name of Israel may be no more in remembrance. 5 For they have consulted together with one consent: they are confederate against thee: **Psalms 83:1-5 KJV***

Watch verse 12 – let us take to ourselves the houses of God!

*Who said, Let us take to ourselves the houses of God in possession. **Psalms 83:12 KJV***

Do you not know that you are the house of God – his temple that the Holy Spirit is dwelling in you?

*Do you not know that you are God's temple and that God's Spirit dwells in you? **1 Corinthians 3:16 KJV***

Whenever an unclean spirit goes out of a person, it “**wanders**” through waterless places looking for a place to rest (“Whenever an unclean spirit goes out of a person, it wanders through waterless places looking for a place to rest but finds none. **Matthew 12:43 ISV**). The sad news is that when they do find a place to rest, they bring along seven more spirits who are worse to enter and to dwell!

*When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none. 44 Then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when he is come, he findeth it empty, swept, and garnished. 45 Then goeth he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the*

*last state of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation. **Matthew 12:43***

Many people come to Christ and/or are delivered but they do not fill their houses with the Word of God and they open up a door for these demons to enter. I saw how people who have been ministered to turn later on against the truths and that person became worse off than before. You need to wash yourself daily in the Word of God, make yourself holy, and cleanse yourself by immersion in the Word of God.

*That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, **Ephesians 5:26 KJV***

*(TLV) to make her holy, having cleansed her by immersion in the word.*

The Chaldeans were a very small nation and they were never conquered until they were destroyed. God used the Chaldeans to bring the children of Israel into bondage until they cried out to Him. After this He destroyed the Chaldeans. Similarly today, God is using the demons for His good until we cry out to Him and repent for deliverance and then God destroys them.

Isn't this so true in our lives today? We cry out in times of trouble to God! Nebuchadnezzar was a Chaldean and the Chaldeans took over Babylon. It was Nebuchadnezzar who took the children of Israel into captivity. When he became the King of Babylon, he took two things:

*1 In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah came **Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon** unto Jerusalem, and besieged it. 2 And the Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand,*

*with part of the **vessels of the house of God: which he carried into the land of Shinar to the house of his god**; and he brought the **vessels into the treasure house of his god**. 3 And the king spake unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring certain of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes; 4 Children in whom was no **blemish**, but well **favoured**, and **skilful in all wisdom**, and **cunning in knowledge**, and **understanding science**, and such as had ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and whom they might **teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans**. 5 And the king appointed them a daily provision of the king's **meat**, and of the wine which he drank: so nourishing them three years, that at the end thereof they might **stand before the king**. **Daniel 1:1-5***

Nebuchadnezzar stole the tithe – *he took the gold and silver* and brought it into the house of his gods and he took the next generation captive - *good looking men – and trained them*.

You have to listen very carefully – Satan is misleading you – he has darkened your understanding through your ignorance.

*Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: **Ephesians 4:18***

Satan still wants the “**tithe**” and the next “**generation**” – training them to speak the tongue of the Chaldeans. He is influencing God's people in every way he can for you not to pay what belongs to God and not to study the Word

of God. Just look at the profound word of Colossians in the GNB (Good News Bible) –

*“You are enslaved yourself when you listening to worthless deceit of human wisdom and teachings by human beings and from ruling spirits”*

*Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ. **Colossians 2:8 KJV***

*See to it, then, that no one enslaves you by means of the worthless deceit of human wisdom, which comes from the teachings handed down by human beings and from the ruling spirits of the universe, and not from Christ. **(GNB)***

The enemy wants to put you in bondage by imputing things into your mind, your body and what belongs to God!

*For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world.*

**1 John 2:16 KJV**

**Lust of the flesh:** “What you put into your body and what you do with your body”

**Lust of the eyes:** “What you put in your mind - try to make you smart”

**Pride of life:** “Any person that does not tithe is arrogant and has pride in him” You believe you can make it on your own. You have to be arrogant to steal from God.

**When we do not tithe - we are opening a door for demons to enter!**

Remember - Satan is a thief and you allow Satan to be a thief when you do not tithe. He will try to influence you to steal - steal from God what belongs to God! This is not to condemn anyone but this is a serious open door for demons!

## DEMONS ARE SQUATTERS

They come in through the back part of the property that you do not visit regularly and then they move to a room where you keep the door closed. No one looks in and/or see that area of your life and before you notice it, these squatters have taken over the whole house!

**This is your agreement today: “To kick out the squatters in your house”**

## THEY ARE VICIOUS

The Chaldeans were vicious people, terrible and dreadful and they made up their own rules – as demons are also today.

*They are **terrible and dreadful**: their judgment and their dignity shall proceed of themselves. **Habakkuk 1:7 KJV***

*They are **notorious for their cruelty**. They do as they like, and no one can interfere. **Habakkuk 1:7 TLB***

*[The Chaldeans] are **terrible and dreadful**; their justice and dignity proceed [only] from themselves. **Habakkuk 1:7 AMP***

*I’m about to raise up **Babylonians to punish you**, Babylonians, fierce and ferocious— World-conquering Babylon, **grabbing up nations right and left, A dreadful and terrible people, making up its own rules as it goes. **Habakkuk 1:7 MSG*****

They are fiercer than the evening wolves and they only come for violence and to keep you in captivity!

*Their horses also are swifter than the leopards and are more fierce than the evening wolves: and their horsemen shall spread themselves, and their horsemen shall come from far; they shall fly as the eagle that hasteth to eat. 9 They shall come all for violence: their faces shall sup up as the east wind, and they shall gather the captivity as the sand. 10 And they shall scoff at the kings, and the princes shall be a scorn unto them: they shall deride every strong hold; for they shall heap dust, and take it.*  
**Habakkuk 1:8 KJV**

They are like wolves!

*Her princes in the midst thereof are like wolves ravening the prey, to shed blood, and to destroy souls, to get dishonest gain.*  
**Ezekiel 22:27**

*Her princes within her are roaring lions; her judges are evening wolves; they gnaw not the bones till the morrow. **Zephaniah 3:3***

#### WOLVES FED AT NIGHT - DEMONS ATTACK AT NIGHT

When you wake up at night, they will try to influence your mind. They will influence you to watch and do wrong things at night.

**Wolves:** *"The Lord did not teach us about predators to teach animal control or children's fables. Wolves and sheep cannot co-exist.*

*When wolves appear most casual and innocent, even interesting to watch, they are studying you, sizing you up for the attack. The more indifferent they seem, the more serious the danger. They are preparing for the pack attack – the more comfortable they appear, the deadlier they are".*

*Wolves are studying you – watch for the attacked – they always looking for the weak. The attacks in packs, surround you and will never give you a break. You are constantly on the attack. When you are at your most vulnerable stage in life – that is when they will attack you.*

#### "BEWARE OF THE CHALDEANS" – "THEY ARE LIKE WOLVES"

The Chaldeans were expert archers – they waited for their enemies and when they were stuck in the mud, they would shoot at them. When you are stuck – that is when these Chaldeans will attack you!

In Acts, Paul warned the people that when he left them, wolves would enter in among them and would not spare the flock.

*For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock. **Acts 20:29***

Wolves are always after the sheep:

- Demonic spirits will come in and try to take out God's sheep
- Wolves and sheep can't co-exist
- Wolves operate in "packs"

- Wolves are studying you, sizing you up for the attack. The more indifferent they seem, the more serious the danger - they are preparing for the pack attacked.
- The more comfortable they appear - the more deadly they are!
- Studying your moves - weak times - they attacked
- Demons do not respect the young or the old

**NB!! STAY IN THE FLOCK - AS CLOSE AS POSSIBLE TO THE SHEPHERD!!**

### THEY ARE CUNNING

The Chaldeans came into Babylon and became friends with the people and then overtook Babylon and Nebuchadnezzar ruled. In the same way they also conquered Assyria – this is how they operate. Even though they were a small nation, they were able to conquer both Babylon and Assyria. This is how Nebuchadnezzar became King of Babylon in 605 BC. They were crafty in their counseling to people - they became your friend and then overpower you!

*Then the king commanded to call the magicians, and the astrologers, and the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans, for to shew the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king.*

**Daniel 2:2**

Chaldeans are **astrologers** (trying to determine your future by natural events that you do not have any control over), **magicians** (distracts to deceive you), **sorcerer** (deceive you by and through actual spirits telling you your future).

**Demons: They Distract, Deceive and try to Determine your Future**

The Chaldeans study their prey just like wolves do and then they throw out bait – not just any bait, but the bait you like. They put it out to lure and catch you in their nets and then they rejoice and are glad.

*They take up all of them with the angle, they catch them in their net, and gather them in their drag: therefore they rejoice and are glad. **Habakkuk 1:15***

- They - the **Chaldeans**
- Take up **Them** - **People with a hook** - Referring to men as fish (*And makest men as the fishes of the sea, as the creeping things, that have no ruler over them? **Habakkuk 1:14*** )
- They put out bait that you like. They put it right in front of your face. Even when Satan tempted Jesus, scripture says he departed from Jesus, only coming back later when He was weak.
- Just think how cunning they are – a mastermind to get Bathsheba naked in front of king David when he stepped out on the balcony to seduce him.
- They (demons), studied King David, watched his movements and put out the bait.

*Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles<sup>G3180</sup> of the devil. **Ephesians 6:11 KJV***

### G3180

methodeia

meth-od-i'-ah

From a compound of G3326 and G3593 [compare “**method**”]; *traveling over*, that is, *travesty*, (*trickery*): - wile, **lie in wait**.

**WILES: "METHODS, SCHEMES, PLOTS OF THE ENEMY"**

Satan and his demons plot against you. It is the world who is making fun of Satan so we wouldn't see how subtle, cunning and *vicious* he is moving. He is not coming to you with red horns, a tail and fork in his hand. Satan has an entire army – an army of locusts and they know exactly what to do and when.

There are seven categories of Satan:

- Thrones
- Lordships
- Rulers
- Authority
- Principalities and Powers
- Rulers of the Darkness
- Evil and Unclean Spirit

All of them refer to demons

The enemy shall speak great words against the most High and they shall wear out the saints (the set apart ones – God's devoted people) of the most High.

*And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time. **Daniel 7:25 KJV***

Satan will attack you when you are weary!

- It was the Chaldeans who stole from Job, but Satan had permission to do so (because of your open doors, it gives Satan permission, a legal right to steal from you).
- Abraham was born in Chaldea - and God called him out! Leave the land of the Chaldeans - God brought Abraham out of the land.
- BUT Abraham's descendants went back to the Chaldeans in captivity by Nebuchadnezzar.

**"IT IS A SHADOW OF THE WALK OF THE BELIEVERS"**

*Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:*

**1 Peter 5:8 KJV**

- Be Sober - Be in Control!
- Be not drunk with wine (out of control) - but under the control of Holy Spirit (in control)
- Only be under the control of the Holy Spirit!
- Do not be afraid - but be watchful
- Roaring lion - lion who does not have teeth anymore
- Jesus pulled out all his teeth - he is already defeated

*And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Juda, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof. **Revelation 5:5 KJV***

**WOLVES AND SHEEP CAN'T CO-EXIST WITHOUT A SHEPHERD!**

When you have the Shepherd, He will take care of you! Never does a Shepherd use his staff or rod to hit the sheep, it is there to keep the wolves at bay.

*Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me. **Psalms 23:4 KJV***

### **GOD ALMIGHTY IS USING THE ROD TO KEEP THE WOLVES AWAY!!**

*Acknowledgment:  
Beware of the Chaldeans by Robert Morris*

## **In Bondage**

This is a very powerful teaching from the Old Testament about a Tyron King, namely Nebuchadnezzar, a Chaldean God uses to teach us the strategy of the enemy. As we move on you will see how Jesus also teaches as about His children who are in bondage. In my own walk and searching for the truth, I sense that many believers (*born again, water and Holy Ghost baptized Christians*) are still in bondage in one way or another. I know this might sound strange to you, but this is what the Word of God is telling us. If you open up your spirit to this profound truth, I will prove in scripture that this is what Jesus came for!

### **YAHSHUA HAMASHIACH CAME FOR YOUR DELIVERANCE TODAY!**

Scripture is very clear that our religious spirit and carnal philosophies are standing in the way of walking out in freedom.

*See to it that no one carries you off as spoil or makes you yourselves captive by his so-called philosophy and intellectualism and vain deceit (idle fancies and plain nonsense), following human tradition (men's ideas of the material rather than the spiritual world), just crude notions following the rudimentary and elemental teachings of the universe and disregarding [the teachings of] Christ (the Messiah). **Colossians 2:8 AMP***

Scripture cannot be clearer than that: "Do not fall into captivity by letting yourself be deceived by worldly philosophies (plain nonsense), following human traditions (all our ideas even in the churches today where religious



tradition is above God's Word). Paul states very strongly; with all these things you are disregarding the teachings of Christ the Messiah.

Even Peter is referring to our beloved brother Paul's comments that people who are deliberately stupid and always demand some unusual interpretation, twisted his letters around to mean something quite different from what he intended.

*Our wise and beloved brother Paul has talked about these same things in many of his letters. Some of his comments are not easy to understand, and there are people who are deliberately stupid, and always demand some unusual interpretation—they have twisted his letters around to mean something quite different from what he meant, just as they do the other parts of the Scripture—and the result is disaster for them. <sup>17</sup>I am warning you ahead of time, dear brothers, so that you can watch out and not be carried away by the mistakes of these wicked men, lest you yourselves become mixed up too. <sup>18</sup>But grow in spiritual strength and become better acquainted with our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be all glory and splendid honor, both now and forevermore. Good-bye. **2 Peter 3:15-18 TLB***

Peter is warning us lest we ourselves become mixed up too! But, rather grow in spiritual strength and become better acquainted with our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ – Yahshua HaMashiach!

## THE GOOD NEWS

When the Lord called me into full time ministry, He called me with Isaiah 61, *"he anointed me to open the prison doors of those who are in captivity"*! For many years I didn't understand this, but as I walked with the Lord He daily showed me the depth of bondage His children is in.

*The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; 2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn; **Isaiah 61:1-2 KJV***

The Lord revealed this passage to me one day about when Jesus started with His ministry. Jesus went into the Synagogue on the Sabbath and they brought Him the scroll of Isaiah.

*And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read. 17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written, **Luke 4:16-17 KJV***

## AND HE STARTED TO READ FROM ISAIAH 61

*"The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and*

*recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, 19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord". **Luke 4:18-19 KJV***

Then Yahshua sat down - with all eyes on Him

*And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him. **Luke 4:18 KJV***

And Jesus said: "And he began to say unto them, *This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears*". **Luke 4:21**. The Amplified says that **today** this Scripture has been **fulfilled while you are present and hearing**.

#### THIS IS SO PROFOUND!

**This is important and I hope you are grabbing hold of this today! Today while you are reading this text, the Lord is saying to you "I Jesus – Yahshua HaMashiach - have been sent to you to heal your broken heart, to deliver you from captivity (depression, oppression, possession, fear, pride, rebellion, strife, envy, and name it) and I am here to recover your sight which blinded you from the truth and I am here today to open your bound prison doors!**

Even more profoundly, which I only discovered a few years later on is the difference in these two scriptures. Read again **Isaiah 61:1-2** and compare it with **Luke 4:18-19**? Can you see the difference?

In **Luke 4**, when Jesus quoted from Isaiah, He did not read the words "**the day of vengeance of our God**".

**Why? Because Yahshua HaMashiach did not come for vengeance!**

That day of vengeance, the day of the Lord – referring to the day of His wrath – is still a day in future that still has to come. This is huge and profound. Jesus had come to set us free. This is the time, a period of the dispensation of grace (see the Book: "**Dispensation**" for more information on this). But, there will be a time when this dispensation will end and then the day of the Lord will come – the day of wrath – Jacob's Trouble or the 70<sup>th</sup> Week of Daniel's prophecy.

While there is still time under this dispensation of grace, let us hold tight onto these words of deliverance as Yahshua HaMashiach desires is to set us at liberty!

#### THE "GOD OF THIS WORLD"

We have to understand that the god of this world has darkened our understanding to the meaning of scripture. Because of our ignorance, he prevents us from seeing the illuminating light of the Gospel. We do not to understand the amazing message Jesus has brought.

**What is this message? To see His image, which is in your born again spirit!!**

*Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart **Ephesians 4:18 KJV***

*In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ,*

*who is the image of God, should shine unto them.*

**2 Corinthians 4:4 KJV**

*among them the god of this world [Satan] has blinded the minds of the unbelieving to prevent them from seeing the **illuminating light of the gospel** of the glory of Christ, **who is the image of God.***

**2 Corinthians 4:4 AMP**

*Satan, who is the god of this evil world, has made him blind, unable to see the glorious **light of the Gospel** that is shining upon him or to understand the amazing message we preach about the glory of Christ, **who is God.*** **2 Corinthians 4:4 TLB**

From the very beginning, God created man according to His image and likeness. Satan came and defeated mankind with his subtle lies and deceptions to blind us. We do not see this image and likeness God imputed to us.

*And God said, Let us make man in our **image**, after our **likeness**: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.* **Genesis 1:26 KJV**

*Now the serpent **was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made.** And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?* **Genesis 3:1 KJV**

Instead through our religious traditions, we have made the Word of God ineffective.

*Making the word of God of none effect through your tradition, which ye have delivered: and many such like things do ye.*

**Mark 7:13 KJV**

Henceforth, through this strong delusion by the god of this world, Satan, we believe a lie!

*And for this cause God shall send them **strong delusion**, that they should **believe a lie.*** **2 Thessalonians 2:11 KJV**

## SO WHO TOLD YOU?

Who told you that you are naked? This was the very first question God asked Adam after they sinned in the Garden of Eden.

*And he said, Who told thee that thou wast naked?* **Genesis 3:11a**

Notice God's response without waiting for Adam to answer back - Did you eat from the tree I had forbidden you to eat? God did not even mention the devil!

*Hast thou eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldest not eat?* **Genesis 3:11b**

Why? Because scripture tells us to whom we yield ourselves to obey - you are the servant of whom you obey!

*Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?* **Romans 6:16 KJV**

There are many voices in the world and all of them has meaning. The question is to whose voice are you listening. Are you also like Adam without a spirit of discernment? Unable to distinguish between the voice of God and the voice of the devil?

*There are, it may be, so many kinds of voices in the world, and none of them is without signification. **1 Corinthians 14:10 KJV***

Are you still a baby drinking milk and are you unskilful in the Word of God?

*For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. When are you going to grow up and start eating strong meat - become full of age so that your senses are exercised to discern both good and evil? 14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil. **Hebrews 5:13 KJV***

Listen to Paul in the Living Bible translation: He says that there are hundreds of different languages (voices) in the world - BUT to him they are meaningless. When that person is talking to me in a voice different than the Shepherd's voice - that voice, that language is just a stranger to me. I do not understand and therefore it is meaningless to me.

*I suppose that there are hundreds of different languages in the world, and all are excellent for those who understand them,<sup>11</sup> but to me they mean nothing. A person talking to me in one of these languages will be a stranger to me and I will be a stranger to him. **1 Corinthians 14:10 TLB***

But instead we are listening to all the voices - languages and we understand them because we grew up in this environment of social media, TV, radio, movies and all these voices are dumping garbage into our soulish realm! Our soul consists of our mind, will, emotion and sub-consciousness. **The battle is in our minds** and if the devil could deceive us through different voices and get us to obey these rather than the Shepherd's voice, he has your mind and can influence your emotions and will.

That is why the Word of God is saying the sword (*the Word of God*) will come and it will pierce through our soul - and it will reveal the thoughts in our hearts.

*(Yea, a sword shall pierce through thy own soul also,) that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed. **Luke 2:35 KJV***

The good news is that Jesus came and He opened the book of Isaiah where the prophets prophesied that Yahshua HaMashiach will come and set all of us free. Jesus came fulfilling the prophecies, standing in the Synagogue saying:

*"Today these words are fulfilled while you are present and hearing it" **Luke 4:21 TLB***

***And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.  
Joh 8:32 KJV***

## Deliverance

As a young believer, we all struggle with the question if a born-again believer can be oppressed or possessed by a demonic spirit. Many gets offended claiming it is impossible. Today I can tell the truth.

- We are making too much of the issue to try and distinguish between demon oppressed, possessed or depressed.
- In reality, it only means being under the influence of a demonic spirit.
- And the scripture tells us, *to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death or of obedience unto righteousness?* **Romans 6:16**

### BUT WE HAVE NEVER BEEN IN BONDAGE TO ANYONE?

*This is exactly what the Jewish people told Jesus - the moment Jesus told them that the truth will set you free in John 8:32*

**Let me share today a profound revelation in the Scriptures regarding the deliverance of true born-again believers. Keep on your seatbelts, it might be a bumpy ride!**

### CONTINUED INIQUITY

Just after Jesus predicted His departure and told the people that *He did nothing out of Myself, but My father taught Me, I speak these things - the Father has not*

*left Me alone, for I always do those things that please Him (John 8:29), He then said to those Jews who believed Him:*

*If ye continue in my word, then are ye **my disciples indeed**; 32  
And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.*

**John 8:31b KJV**

He was speaking to the people who believed Him and they were his disciples! He did not speak here to the unbelievers. In the very next verse Jesus mentions to them that it is the truth that will set them all free. Just look how the Jews, the believers responded to Jesus:

*They answered him, We be Abraham's seed, **and were never in bondage to any man**: how sayest thou, Ye shall be made free?*

**John 8:33 KJV**

**They were very arrogant saying they were never in bondage!** Isn't this laughable! During history these people have been slaves for many years. Moses came and delivered them to the Promised Land and while they were speaking to Jesus they were under the control of the Roman Empire!

But they said they were never in bondage.

Does this sound similar to the church of today? - We have never been in bondage to anybody! Just look how Jesus responded.

*Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin. 35 And the servant abideth not in the house for ever: but the Son abideth ever. 36 If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed. 37 I know that ye are Abraham's seed; but ye seek to kill me, because*

*my word hath no place in you. 38 I speak that which I have seen with my Father: and ye do that which ye have seen with your father. 39 They answered and said unto him, Abraham is our father. Jesus saith unto them, If ye were Abraham's children, ye would do the works of Abraham. **John 8:34-39 KJV***

Jesus is saying to them whosoever commits sin, is the servant of sin - **henceforth you are in bondage and needs deliverance!** Notice, these were believers to whom Jesus was talking to and I will prove it further to you - just hold on! But Jesus was not yet finished with them - He said that He knew that they were from Abraham's seed (referring to believers), but they did not do what believers were supposed to do. Instead, they were only trying to kill Him. Similarly today - we are sitting in church, from Monday to Saturday and just before and after the church services we operate under a different voice, the language of the world where a dog-eats-dog mentality applies. Finally, Jesus asked them why they did not understand His speech - voice - language?

***Why do ye not understand my speech?** even because ye cannot hear my word. **John 8:43***

My only conclusion - Jesus said that their father was the devil.

*Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and **abode not in the truth** because there is no **truth in him**. When he **speaketh a lie**, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar and the **father of it**. **John 8:44***

These are very hard words.

**WHENEVER YOU ARE NOT IN THE TRUTH, IT MEANS YOU ARE LISTENING TO A DIFFERENT VOICE - LANGUAGE - AND THE CONCLUSION IS THAT THE VOICE MUST BE FROM THE FATHER OF ALL LIES, BECAUSE THAT IS THE ONLY LANGUAGE HE CAN SPEAK. THERE SIMPLY IS NO TRUTH IN ANY OTHER VOICE THAN THE VOICE OF THE SHEPHERD!**

### CONTINUED ILLNESS

In Luke 13 Jesus saw a woman who had a spirit of infirmity for eighteen years, was bent over and could not even raise herself up. When Jesus saw her, He called her to Him (*Normally people came to Jesus for healing, but this time Jesus called her on His own*).

*And when Jesus saw her, he called her to him, and said unto her, Woman, **thou art loosed from thine infirmity**. **Luke 13:12 KJV***

Interestingly, Jesus first spoke to the spirit and then He laid His hands on her. When His hands touch her, she immediately straightened.

*And he **laid his hands on her: and immediately** she was made straight, and glorified God. **Luke 13:13 KJV***

Immediately after He healed her, the church, the rulers of the synagogue was on Jesus' case for healing on the Sabbath. They even pointed out that there were six days during the week to do these works! Isn't this similar to today's church? What are we doing on a Sunday in church if we do not even deliver people? There are as a result thousands of people today looking for answers outside of the church.

***God found this woman in church and for 18 years the church made her comfortable in her discomfort! Churches today are making their members***

*comfortable in their discomfort because it lacks any anointing and is not demonstrating the power that God gave to His Body to deliver people.* This is what religion is doing, it is making the Word of God non-effective. BUT Jesus came for your deliverance - His desire is to break your discomfort and wishes for you to be free, happy and at peace.

And Jesus answered them saying this woman was a **daughter of Abraham** (notice, a believer, a born again believer with rights including the right to be healed) bound by SATAN for 18 years. She had the right to unbound.

*And ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan hath bound, lo, these eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the sabbath day? **Luke 13:16 KJV***

In our previous example, the people referred back, claiming that they were from Abraham's seed, meaning they are Jews under the Covenant, included in the promise God had made with Abraham. But Jesus told them because of what they were doing, believing and obeying, that they must be the children of the devil. In this case, Jesus Himself brought it up saying that this woman is a daughter of Abraham and henceforth has the right to be healed. What Jesus was saying was that you can only be a child of Abraham, belonging to Jesus by faith.

*Know ye therefore that they which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham. **Galatians 3:7 KJV***

Or, if you are in Christ, meaning the Gentiles (*even before God opened the door for the Gentiles to come into the Kingdom of God*), you then are also Abraham's seed and heirs according to the promise.

*And if ye be Christ's, then are ye Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise. **Galatians 3:29 KJV***

Many people in the Body of Christ believe today that God is allowing good and evil in our lives - but this is very far from the truth. God came to heal the sick and all that are oppressed of the devil. God is not the author of depression, it is not God who gave you depression nor was He the one who give you cancer, it is a lie from hell.

*How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and **healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him. Acts 10:38 KJV***

Paul also confirmed this, when people got healed, the evil spirits left them. Disease and evil spirits are synonyms and go hand in hand.

*11 And God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul: 12 So that from his body were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the **diseases departed from them, and the evil spirits went out of them. Acts 19:11***

This is precisely what Jesus, the 12 Apostles and Paul demonstrated, the anointing and the power of the Holy Spirit to deliver God's children. Something that our churches today do not think is necessary anymore, or believers don't think we need, but scriptures are telling us a different story.

## CONTINUED INFLUENCE

**Next, we are reading of a Greek, a Syro-Phoenician woman in mark 7.**

In Verse 24 the Scripture mentions the City of Tyre. None of the words in the Bible are insignificant. Why is the Bible telling us the detail of the woman? Isn't by saying she is a Greek woman enough to illustrate that she was not a Jew, hence an unbeliever? Why does it tell us she was a Syro-Phoenician woman?

- The City of Tyro was a city of Phoenicia where Jezebel was born and she brought paganism into Israel. Syro means Syria and Syria refers to pride.

When you see the word Syro-Phoenician it means that you mixing **pride** with **paganism** and that is precisely what is currently happening in our society. We are watching, listening and are even sometimes involved in small occult activities and because of pride we think it will not influence or affect us.

*And from thence he arose, and went into the borders of Tyre and Sidon, and entered into an house, and would have no man know it: but he could not be hid. 25 For a certain woman, whose young daughter had an unclean spirit, heard of him, and came and fell at his feet: 26 The woman was a Greek, a Syrophenician by nation; and she besought him that he would cast forth the devil out of her daughter. **Mark 7:24-26 KJV***

This can't be further from the truth because scripture tells us that "**bad company corrupts good morals**" (1 Corinthians 15:33). This is just another way the devil has deceived us, thinking that if you are a born-again believer all the evil stuff you are watching, hearing and or participating in will not influence your soul.

So, this woman came to Jesus asking Jesus to cast out an evil spirit from her daughter. Jesus's answer to this woman is initially shocking - He called her a dog and said the children must first eat and that He can't take the children's bread and throw it for the dogs.

*But Jesus said unto her, Let the children first be filled: for it is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it unto the dogs.*

**Mark 7:27 KJV**

## WAS JESUS RUDE TO CALL THIS UNBELIEVER A DOG?

Why was Jesus calling this Greek, Syro-Phoenician woman a dog?

In Rev 22 Jesus is saying that He is the Alpha and the Omega and blessed are they that do His commandments. They will have the right to the tree of life and they may enter through the gates into the city - Heaven.

*I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. 14 Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city. **Revelation 22:13-14 KJV***

But **outside the gates**, those who will not enter through the gates of Heaven are the **impure, godless** and those of low moral character - **Dogs!**

***For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie. **Revelation 22:15 KJV*****

*"Outside the city are those who have strayed away from God, and the sorcerers and the immoral and murderers and idolaters, and all who love to lie, and do so. **Revelation 22:15 TLB***



*Outside are the **dogs [the godless, the impure, those of low moral character]** and the sorcerers [with their intoxicating drugs, and magic arts], and the immoral persons [the perverted, the molesters, and the adulterers], and the murderers, and the idolaters, and everyone who loves and practices lying (deception, cheating). **Revelation 22:15 AMP***

So Jesus was referring to this Greek woman as an impure person, of low moral character not yet born again and able to eat the fruits of the tree of life to enter the gates of heaven. Paul warns us to be aware of the dogs - evil workers for we (born-again believers) worship God in the spirit and not walking after the flesh.

***Beware of dogs,** beware of evil workers, beware of the concision. 3 For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh. **Philippians 3:2***

The way this woman answered Jesus confesses that she understood the language Jesus was using - she did not get offended at all (*how dare you call me a dog*) - but instead answered Jesus:

*Yes, Lord: **yet the dogs under the table eat of the children's crumbs. Mark 7:28b KJV***

**Out of faith and understanding, she is standing outside the gates of heaven, waiting for God's lost sheep to enter first. She was satisfied with the crumbs under the table. This answer saved her daughter and the evil spirit left her.**

*And he said unto her, For this saying go thy way; the devil is gone out of thy daughter. 30 And when she was come to her house, she found the devil gone out, and her daughter laid upon the bed. **Mark 7:29 KJV***

To conclude this section, it is clear that we as born-again believers are in captivity because of a **continued iniquity** (John 8:31-36), **continued illness** (Luke 13;11-16) and **continued influence of paganism** (Mark 7:24-30) and we need deliverance.

And this is the first message Jesus gave to the people when He started His ministry. In His own Words, Jesus said:

*The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, 19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord. **Luke 4:18-19 KJV***

**Today this Scripture has been fulfilled while you are present and hearing.**

**Luke 4:21.**

## Daily Bread

I'd like to insert a separate section in here as I believe God gave me a revelation and I'd like to share it with you. This is an important link to come out of bondage, slavery, and captivity. Don't rush over the scriptures, but rather take a moment and meditate on it, asking God to reveal the truth in your heart. Ask Him that the Holy Spirit – the Ruach HaKodesh will come and reveal all the hidden sin in your life, which need repentance for deliverance. Let the Holy Spirit work in you and through you.

In John 6 Jesus fed the 5 000 households with the two fish and five loaves of bread. After that, Jesus came to the disciples when they were on their way to Capernaum by boat and they saw Jesus walking on the water towards them. The next morning when the **people found Him on the other side of the sea**, they said to Him:

*"Rabbi, when did You come here?" John 6:25*

*"Jesus responded and saying to them that they do not seek Him to see signs and wonder, but because He fed them and they ate of the loaves and were filled (verse 26).*

And then Jesus said:

*But you shouldn't be so concerned about **perishable things like food**. No, spend your energy **seeking the eternal life that I, the Messiah, can give you**. For God, the Father has sent me for this very purpose." John 6:27 TLB*

Jesus is saying to them not to look for perishable things like food - bread - the bread He fed to the multitudes the previous day. But still, the people constantly misinterpreted what Jesus was trying to tell them. They said that our fathers ate the manna in the desert and they referred to scripture as it is written: **"He gave them bread from heaven to eat"**

*And had rained down manna upon them to eat, and had given them of the corn of heaven. Psalm 78:24 KJV*

And again Jesus tried to tell them that **"I am the bread"** you need and when you eat Me you shall never be hungry again.

*And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst. John 6:35 KJV*

But the people started murmuring because He said that He was the bread that came down from heaven. They even referred **back to Jesus as the son of Joseph**, the carpenter. "Ye - we know this Jesus - He is the son of Joseph the carpenter - how can he tell us to eat him and that he is the bread came down from heaven?"

*The Jews then murmured at him, because he said, I am the bread which came down from heaven. 42 And they said, Is not this Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? how is it then that he saith, I came down from heaven? Jesus therefore answered and said unto them, Murmur not among yourselves. 44 No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. John 6:41-44 KJV*

Jesus just keeps referring to Himself as the bread of life. He tried to explain to them that even the manna in the wilderness kept them alive only for 40 years (And the children of Israel did eat manna forty years, until they came to a land inhabited; they did eat manna, until they came unto the borders of the land of Canaan **Exodus 16:35** ) they still died.

*I am that bread of life. 49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead. 50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die. 51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.*

**John 6:48-51 KJV**

Being Jews, they should have known the scriptures as God told them in Deuteronomy that from bread alone you shall not live.

*And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man **doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the LORD doth man live. Deuteronomy 8:3 KJV***

Jesus was trying to explain to them to just believe in Him for the everlasting life so you can live forever.

*Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life. 48 I am that bread of life. 49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead. 50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof,*

*and not die. 51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. **John 6:47 KJV***

**And then Jesus even pointed to the very important issue of the Lord's supper**

*The Jews therefore strove among themselves, saying, How can this man give us his flesh to eat? 53 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you. 54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day. 55 For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed. 6 He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him. 57 As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me. 58 This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever. **John 6:52-58 KJV***

I think, putting everything together, meditating on these scriptures Jesus was telling the people that from daily bread - **the bread that He multiplied yesterday** for them and the bread (manna) their forefathers ate in the wilderness, is not what would give you eternal life. "**I am your way to eternal life. You have to eat my flesh and drink my blood to go into the gates of heaven**". And Jesus answered him, saying, "It is written, That man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God (**Luke 4:4**).

**Might it be - that this is what Jesus is trying to say to us:**

**Give us this day our daily bread. (Matthew 6:11; Luke 11:3)**

**I think Jesus is saying:**

- Do you remember how I fed your forefathers in the wilderness with manna?
- How I humbled you by letting you go hungry and then feeding you with manna, a food previously unknown to both you and your ancestors. I did it to help you realize that food isn't everything and that real life comes by obeying every command of God (Deuteronomy 8:3 - TLB)
- Do you remember yesterday how I fed 5 000 households with two fishes and five loaves of bread?
- Now I am telling you **that my children first be filled** and I didn't come to feed the dogs but feed **My flock first** so that they can enter the gates of heaven.
- Give us our daily bread is not like I fed your ancestors in the wilderness with manna because they died.
- I am the bread of life and that is why I came so that the Word of the Prophesies could be fulfilled - to bring you out of captivity, deliver you and open your prison doors to freedom.
- Your **daily bread is my deliverance** to you so you can be **sanctified in your spirit, soul, and body**.
- For My flesh is meat indeed, and My blood is drink indeed and as you eat My flesh, and drink My blood, you **shall dwell in Me, and I in him**.
- And as you are in Christ, then you are Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise.

- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna and will give him a white stone, and in the stone, a new name was written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it. **(Revelation 2:17)**

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. If you hear and listen and obey my words you are blessed that do my commandments, and you may have right to **the tree of life** and may enter in through the gates into the city. **(Revelation 22:13-14)**

**Jesus is saying:**

**"It is My desire and My privilege to deliver you if you believe -**

**For you to enter the gates of Heaven!**

**Will you let me?**

**Healing is the believer's Daily Bread!**

## God's Communion

This brings us to the next very important issue of the Lord's Supper - His Communion. Instituting the communion to the disciples, Jesus introduced the new covenant in His blood - **Luke 22:20b**, *"This cup that is poured out for you is the new covenant in my blood."* Through his blood, we have redemption and forgiveness of sin (*In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins* **Colossians 1:14**). Paul goes on in Corinthians explaining what is going on in the body of Christ because of not discerning the Lord's body - 1 Corinthians 11:30 Paul is talking about a physical disease problem in God's people: **Many are weak. Many are sickly. Many sleep** - this means they died prematurely because they did not discern the Lord's body. The term sleep refers to the death of believers.

*For this cause many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep.* **1 Corinthians 11:30 KJV**

I was shocked to discover that the church's form of Communion does not mention anything about the true meaning of the bread. It is the "Lord's Body" we must discern. It is by His stripes we were healed (*past tense – it is already done!*).

*Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted. Isa 53:5*  
*But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.* **Isaiah 53:4-5 KJV**

*Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.* **1 Peter 2:24 KJV**

*LORD, O my soul: and all that is within me, bless his holy name. 2 Bless the LORD, O my soul, and forget not all his benefits: 3 Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases;* **Psalms 103:1-3 KJV**

*He sent his word, and healed them, and delivered them from their destructions.* **Psalms 107:20 KJV**

*That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.*  
**Matthew 8:17 LKV**

*Beloved, I wish above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospereth.* **3 John 1:2 KJV**

The message is crystal clear, Jesus descended from heaven, as our daily bread to be eaten to give us deliverance and eternal life. Henceforth, we have to eat the bread during communion, believing and acknowledging that we are healed by His stripes. The Lord is the same yesterday, today and forever - hence, He is still for today. God already healed us (past tense) - we must only believe it when we participate in God's communion.

**Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever. Hebrews 13:8 KJV**

If we don't want to be sickly and die prematurely, then we must have faith in the healing provided by Christ, as well as forgiveness. The Lord is the same -

HE healed people in the Old Testament and HE healed people in the New Testament and HE is still healing today.

**Many today do not discern the Lord's Body correctly in Communion**

*Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. 28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. 29 For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. 30 For this cause many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep. 31 For if we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged. 1 Corinthians 11:27-31 KJV*

Unfortunately, it is not the focus of this book to discuss the reasons why we are sick. The best book to read on this topic is the work of **Dr Henry W. Wright – A more Excellent Way – Be in Health**. Not only have I read the book, but also applied the revelational truths Dr. Wright reveals to his readers and saw many healing miracles myself after I applied it under the leading of the Holy Spirit in many people's lives.

**ASPECTS AS TO WHY COMMUNION REPRESENTS A BLOCK TO YOUR HEALING**

**Aspect 1**

Communion is one of the sacraments of the Church - According to Scripture there are 3 sacraments;

- Water Baptism
- Communion
- Foot Washing

It is only these 3 sacraments found in the Scripture as Commandments. In communion, you are celebrating the remembrance of Christ in two dimensions:

- His shed blood
- His broken body

When we unworthily partake of the forgiveness God represents in communion and do not repent unto Him, then we are guilty of fraud and have cursed ourselves with a curse. This is partaking unworthily. We have cursed ourselves with a curse because we made what Jesus did on the cross of no effect for us.

**It is not the sacrament that saves us - it is the obedience!** Part of this aspect is not judging ourselves with regard to **sin as the spiritual roots of disease**.

- We bring forth the repentance so the forgiveness, deliverance, and healing can be appropriated and bring forth the full benefits provided in the Lord's Supper.
- Judging ourselves involves having the discernment to know specifically what is being repented for. Otherwise, we do not know what to stand against, what to change in our lives and what to renounce out of our lives.
- Generic repentance and asking in a generic way for forgiveness of our sins, without knowing what those sins are, accomplishes very little.
- Many people say "Father God, forgive me of all my sin" and He does forgive, but there can be no repentance without knowing specifically the sin that needs to be sanctified out of our life.

### **Aspect 2**

This aspect has to do with us "**eating each other alive.**" This is "not discerning the Lord's body"

- It creates what we might call an "auto-immune disease" in the Body of Christ (church). This is the body of believers attacking one another in relationships, in like manner as an autoimmune disease attacks the physical body.
- It has to do with fellowship and relationship with one another in the Church - if you say you love the Lord, yet you hate your brother, the love of God is not with you!

*We know that we have passed from death unto life because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death. **1 John 3:14 KJV***

When we partake of the Lord's Supper (Communion) in remembrance of Him, we are saying to Him that because of what He did for us, we are ready to do this for each other; laying our lives down in service one to another. When we partake of communion and ignore our brother in his need and his disease, then we have negated the fellowship with him which communion represents and we are cursed with a curse.

Communion is koinonia - That is fellowship with each other.

*The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ? 17 For we being many are one bread, and one body: for we are all partakers of that one bread. **1 Corinthians 10:16-17 KJV***

*But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin. **1 John 1:7 KJV***

**The CUP (the blood) is for forgiveness of sins on the vertical level from God and on the horizontal level with each other.**

**The BREAD is the bread of life for healing of our bodies through helping one another deal with the spiritual roots of disease and blocks to healing.**

It is the Church being the Church and ministering the life of God to each other. Then we can truly say:

*For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost. **Romans 14:17 KJV***

### **Aspect 3**

**This aspect is to churches who do not believe that healing is for today!**

- The shed blood of Jesus was not for the healing of disease.
- His shed blood was for the forgiveness of sins.
- Scripture is clear; without the shedding of blood, there is no remission of sins.

*For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. **Matthew 26:28 KJV***

*And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission. **Hebrews 9:22 KJV***

So, when we come into communion and take the **CUP**, we acknowledge that what HE did for us allows us to be able to repent, have **cleansing and forgiveness of all sin**.

*The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the Light, that all men through him might believe. 8 He was not that Light, but was sent to bear witness of that Light. 9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world. 10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. **John 1:7-10 KJV***

**However, the broken bread represents the stripes that were laid on Jesus.**

- **The bread represents freedom from the curse and the curse is all manner of disease (Deuteronomy 28)**

*Who his own self bare our sins in **his own body** on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by **whose stripes ye were healed**. **1 Peter 2:24 KJV***

**When we do not believe healing is for today and teach that it is not, and then take the bread of communion, which represents the freedom from the curse, but deny freedom is for today, we have brought a CURSE into our lives!**

We are cursed with a curse, which is the disease and we now say we cannot be healed from it; yet we celebrate the sacrament provided for that healing. There is something theologically wrong with this picture.

This happens because we negate one-half of what Christ did on the cross.

In partaking of the bread, we curse ourselves in our ignorance and our apostasy - for these three reasons, many of us are **weak**, are **sick** and die **premature deaths** - because we are cursed with a curse we have brought upon ourselves because of unbelief.

**This is a tough teaching:**

Those who are not correctly discerning the body of Christ personally and what all the work He did at the cross represents, opens the door for sickness and disease and premature death.

**This is a spiritual block to healing**

**Aspect 4**

The last aspect of communion is not to correctly apply God's resurrection power in our lives!

***Few born again believers know that we have the resurrection power of Jesus Christ in us. Those who know it, do not know how to use it. This is profound and therein lies the secret to healing the SOUL!***

*I also pray that you will understand the incredible **greatness of God's power for us who believe him. This is the same mighty power that raised Christ from the dead** and seated him in the place of honor at God's right hand in the heavenly realms. **Ephesians 1:19 NLT***



*The Spirit of God, who raised Jesus from the dead, lives in you.  
And just as God raised Christ Jesus from the dead, he will give life  
to your mortal bodies by this same Spirit living within you.*

**Romans 8:11 NLT**

Now it is up to you to believe and to acknowledge these truths God has revealed to you today. And this is all you need to do to activate your faith, only by the acknowledging of the good news

*That the communication of thy faith may become effectual by  
the acknowledging of every good thing which is in you in Christ  
Jesus. **Philemon 1:6 KJV***



## Part 2 Hardness of the Heart

I also discovered that because of the hardness of our hearts we are storing up wrath for ourselves on the day of wrath when God's righteous judgment will be revealed. God is longsuffering and He is waiting all this time without punishing us, to give us time to turn from our sin. But because of our stubbornness in refusing to turn from sin, we do not want to listen and so we are saving up terrible punishment for yourselves.

*<sup>4</sup> Don't you realize how patient he is being with you? Or don't you care? Can't you see that he has been waiting all this time without punishing you, to give you time to turn from your sin? His kindness is meant to lead you to repentance. <sup>5</sup> But no, you won't listen; and so you are saving up terrible punishment for yourselves because of your stubbornness in refusing to turn from your sin; for there is going to come a day of wrath when God will be the just Judge of all the world. **Romans 2:4-5 TLB***

The KJV refers to a hardness of the heart.

*but after thy **hardness and impenitent heart** treasurest up for  
thyself wrath in the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous  
judgment of God; **Romans 2:5 KJV***

On the 24<sup>th</sup> May 2017 God showed me the vision of the prophet Isaiah in Chapter 6. When I woke up, I asked God about it and in my spirit, I felt the following message:

***“Delivering a message of impending disaster to his already doomed fellow children whose persistent hardening of heart has so dulled their moral sensitivity that nothing will prompt them to heed the warning”.***

This is the first time God has given me a **message of warning** to His people. God also clearly revealed to me what His intention is when He warns His people. I think that the Body of Christ misunderstood God's intentions when He issued a warning to His children. I pray that the Holy Ghost will revealed this truth to set us free.

But since then, God has given me so many additional revelations and mysteries, I did not finish this section immediately. When I came back to finish it, God revealed an even deeper meaning of **“hardness of the heart”**. It is like the same coin, but with two sides. As I started to write the message down, I wondered which side of the coin we must first start with?

Many are maybe far less familiar with the softer side of the **“hardness of the heart”**, so I decided to start with that side first. The second part will deal with my dream and God's warning to his beloved people.

### The Heart

The more I shared revelations with people, the more I learned how the god of this world has blinded them and kept them in darkness. Henceforth, it might be necessary to first clear the issue of **“the heart”**.

You might be surprised, but in sharing this with a person with a medical background, the person's response was: **“the heart is just a pumping organ and cannot process any information”**. It surprised me and I realised how deep

the deception of Satan is. The word “heart” appears 833 times in the KJV Bible. I started to wonder what the meaning is when we say to our loved ones that we love them with our whole heart? And what does this mean when the Lord commanded us to love Him with our whole heart?

*Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind.*

**Matthew 22:37 KJV**

In Greek the word **heart** is **“kardia”** – that is where our medical terminology might come from – cardiovascular, which refers to the heart and blood vessels. The Strong define it as **“figuratively the thoughts or feelings or mind”**

**G2588**

kardia

*kar-dee'-ah*

Prolonged from a primary *kár* kar (Latin *cor*, “heart”); the *heart*, that is, **(figuratively) the thoughts or feelings (mind)**; also (by analogy) the *middle*: - (+ broken-) heart (-ed).

The first time that the word heart appears in the Bible is in Genesis 6

*And GOD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his **heart**<sup>H3820</sup> was only evil continually. **Genesis 6:5 KJV***

In Hebrew, this word is **“labe”** and refers **figuratively to feelings, the will, intellect – the centre of anything.**

**H3820**

lêb

labe

A form of H3824; the *heart*; also used (*figuratively*) very *widely for the feelings*, the *will* and even the *intellect*; *likewise for the centre of anything*: - + care for, comfortably, consent, X considered, courag [-eous], friend [-ly], ([broken-], [hard-], [merry-], [stiff-], [stout-], double heart [-ed]), X heed, X I, kindly, midst, mind (-ed), X regard ([ed]), X themselves, X *unawares*, *understanding*, X well, *willingly*, *wisdom*.

But in Genesis 20 we find another reference in Hebrew that is **H3824**.

*Said he not unto me, She is my sister? and she, even she herself said, He is my brother: in the integrity of my heart H3824 and innocency of my hands have I done this. Genesis 20:5*

**H3824**

lêbâb

lay-bawb'

From H3823; the *heart* (as the most interior organ); used also like H3820:

- + bethink themselves, breast, comfortably, courage, ([faint], [tender-] heart[-ed]), midst, *mind*, X *unawares*, *understanding*.

Strong defines it as the mind and understanding.

In Greek, the first time that the word “heart” appears, is in Matthew 5 and has the same reference and meaning of our original text, namely *thoughts, feelings and mind*.

Matthew 5:8 Blessed are the pure in heart <sup>G2588</sup>: for they shall see

God. KJV

**G2588**

kardia

kar-dee'-ah

Prolonged from a primary kâp kar (Latin *cor*, “heart”); the *heart*, that is, (*figuratively*) the *thoughts or feelings (mind)*; also (by analogy) the *middle*: - (+ broken-) heart (-ed).

But in Mark 10, another reference appeared for heart, namely G4641.

*And Jesus answered and said unto them, For the hardness of your heart <sup>G4641 G5216</sup> he wrote you this precept. Mark 10:5 KJV*

**G4641**

sklêrokardia

sklay-rok-ar-dee'-ah

**Feminine** of a compound of G4642 and G2588; *hard heartedness*, that is, (specifically) *destitution of (spiritual) perception: - hardness of heart*.

**G5216**

humōn

hoo-mone'

Genitive case of G5210; of (from or concerning) you: - ye, you, *your (own, -selves)*.

G4641 specifically refers to hard heartedness – that is specifically destitution of spiritual perception – “*hardness of heart*”. In this verse, it also refers to G5216 which means “*your own selves*”.

Putting everything together it seems that when scriptures refer to “**the heart**” it refers to:

- the thoughts, feelings and mind
- the will, intellect – the centre of anything
- the *centre* of anything
- unawares, understanding, X well, willingly, wisdom
- X unawares
- hardness of heart
- your own selves

Henceforth, figuratively speaking - our heart controls the thoughts and feelings – it directs all aspects of our life.

*Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life. **Proverbs 4:23 KJV***

The Bible says, as a man thinketh in his heart, so is he!

*For as he thinketh in his heart, so is he **Proverbs 23:7a KJV***

Therefore, know your enemy and know yourself. Identify your main areas of weakness and set limits, guards and hindrances that make it harder for the enemy to get to your weak areas. Put up a fight in the spirit. Take up Godly anger, submit to God and resist the devil and he will flee from you (James 4:7).

**We have to learn to stir ourselves up in the spirit – edify ourselves and take the kingdom violently by force!**

*And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of heaven suffereth violence, and men of violence take it by force.*

**Matthew 11:12 ASV**

## **HARDNESS OF THE HEART**

*Acknowledgement: “A teaching by Andrew Wommack”*

Hardening of the heart is not just for those who hated God or do not want to listen to His voice and corrections, but is also present in us who believes and respond to His voice. That might shock you – but these scriptures will reveal profound truths to you. As for me, it would change your whole outlook, your life, your faith and after all your “**heart**”.

**Now, this is a radical statement to make.**

Let us look into the scripture. Just after Jesus fed the 5000 with two fish and five loaves of bread, He commanded His disciples to go to the other side.

*And they that did eat of the loaves were about five thousand men. 45 And straightway he constrained his disciples to get into the ship, and to go to the other side before unto Bethsaida, while he sent away the people. **Mark 6:44-45 KJV***

We all knew this story of the storm and Jesus walked on the water towards the ship. **Jesus was walking on the very same thing that wants to destroy the disciples.** Peter stepped out of the boat, walked towards Jesus on the water and sank when He took His eyes off Jesus. But Jesus rescued him and when

you put this message in all 4 Gospels together, it says: **“When Jesus entered with Peter in the ship, immediately the ship was at the land and the sea was flat and calm like glass”**

*Then they willingly received him into the ship: and immediately the ship was at the land whither they went. John 6:21 KJV*

## Unable To Take It In

It was still a two hour sail to the land, but instantly, when Jesus entered the boat – they were at the other side. When you read the verse, on eye view it sounds very innocent: **“they were sore amazed in themselves beyond measure”**

*And he went up unto them into the ship, and the wind ceased: and they were sore amazed in themselves beyond measure, and wondered. Mark 6:51 KJV*

*The TLB says that they were “unable to take it in”*

*But he spoke to them at once. “It’s all right,” he said. “It is I! Don’t be afraid.”<sup>51</sup> Then he climbed into the boat and the wind stopped! They just sat there, unable to take it in!<sup>52</sup> For they still didn’t realize who he was, even after the miracle the evening before! For they didn’t want to believe! Mark 6:50-52 TLB*

**How many times have God done things in our lives that we were just as astonished about?**

That we were so amazed that we were unable to take it in. Sounds very normal to me? But just look what the next verse is saying:

***For they considered not the miracle of the loaves: for their heart was hardened. Mark 6:52 KJV***

What it says is that the disciples were **more sensitive to the natural realm**, which is so easy to believe, but when it came to the **supernatural**, they were **so insensitive** that they **could not believe**. The reason for the unbelief is because of a hardened heart.

***This is major!***

### **Story:**

*Andrew told a story during a healing session where he prayed for a boy with serious cross eyes. He took authority, believed for the healing and just before he opened his eyes, he was just about to tell the boy that sometimes healing comes over time ..... and when he opened his eyes the boy's eyes were fully restored. Andrew made a remark, the same type of remark the disciples said .... I cannot believe this, it was just too good to be true .... and the boy's eyes turned cross again. He prayed for him, but that boy's eyes did not fully restore as in the beginning.*

### **Own Experience:**

*Now that I understand this, I realise that I have experienced the same thing. I was praying over my eyes for a few weeks to focus without glasses to be able to read on my cell phone. One day just after I had ministered and prayed for somebody who received healing, I entered my mother's room and told her that the letters on my phone has never been*

*more focussed without glasses. That was amazing – “unbelievable” And it turned back to unfocused again .....*

We must reach a point where the supernatural realm is just as normal as the natural that it is not surprising or shocking anymore. We are walking by faith and not by sight (2 Corinthians 5:7). By doing so, we have limited the Holy Spirit.

*How oft did they provoke him in the wilderness, and grieve him in the desert! 41 Yea, they turned back and tempted God, and limited the Holy One of Israel. Psalm 78:40 KJV*

**All of these are pointing to the condition of our hearts: “For as he thinketh in his heart, so is he” Proverbs 23:7 KJV**

Before anything outwardly can change, a change of the heart condition is a pre-requisite. In other words – first, change your heart towards a specific situation before it can change and manifest in the physical realm.

The reason why we are shocked and amazed at the miracle and supernatural provision is that we have hardened hearts. Hardened hearts are therefore not only for those who rebel against God but to those who can’t believe the supernatural power of the Lord.

The meaning of “hardened” that has to do with the heart is;

**Cold, insensitive, un-felled, and un-yielded towards something!**

It should not be an abnormal occurrence for us when Jesus does miracles in our lives.

**Think about this:**

What was Jesus’s reaction when he took the bread broke it – after He looked up and blessed the food – and gave it to the disciples. He was not jumping up and down praising the Father for the miracle that just happened. Why?? Because He is used to the supernatural and He does not have any area in His heart that is hardened – *cold, insensitive, unfeeling and un-yielded*.

**Perceive ye not**

After the feeding of the 5000 in Mark 6, the same incident came upon the disciples again. And listen to Jesus’ words in Mark 8 when they faced the same situation to feed people. Instead of them learning something about it, it seems they still just couldn’t get it.

He asked them why they were reasoning about not having bread?

*And when Jesus knew it, he saith unto them, Why reason ye, because ye have no bread? perceive ye not yet, neither understand? have ye your heart yet hardened? 18 Having eyes, see ye not? and having ears, hear ye not? and do ye not remember? Mark 8:17-18 KJV*

**Understand ye not?**

Don’t you **understand** it? Aren’t you getting it?

For not being able to perceive is an indication of a hardened heart. Likewise, if you hear something but you do not understand it, is an indication of a hardened heart.

**Can't you see and hear?**

He also pointed out that they did not have eyes – but you do not see and you do have ears but you do not hear. Jesus points again to their hardened hearts. He wants His disciples to “tune” their ears unto Him and listen to what He is saying and teaching us.

*My son, attend to my words; incline thine ear unto my sayings.*

**Proverbs 4:20 KJV**

We need to sensitize ourselves to His teachings and desensitize us to the normal world.

**Don't you Remember**

Jesus goes on – don't you remember. If you do not remember, it means you have a hardened heart.

*Having eyes, see ye not? And having ears, hear ye not? And do ye*

*not remember? Mark 8:18 KJV*

When we can't remember the Word of God it is because we are not focused and tuned on Him. Many of us can easily remember all the football player's names, scores of games etc., but they can't quote any scripture.

**Pharaoh**

The Pharaoh of Egypt is probably one of the best examples of a person with a hardened heart. He just would not let go. If his heart was sensitive, he could let the people go after the first plague. But instead, he kept on refusing. Just look at the Pharaoh's answer when Moses asked him when he must remove

the frogs: “and he said tomorrow”. Don't you think if your heart is sensitive towards God, you would probably say “**NOW**”?

*Moses told Pharaoh, "You decide when I should plead for you, your servants, and your people to remove the frogs from you and your household. They'll remain only in the Nile." 10 Pharaoh said, "Tomorrow." Moses said, "It will be just as you say, so that you may know that there is no one like the LORD our God.*

**Exodus 8:9-10 KJV**

Finally, the Pharaoh gave in when his people, his land, and everything was defeated. But still, because of a hardened heart, he decided to take his armies and follow Moses. Why? Because his heart was so hardened that he still could not understand what is going on. Here, Moses supernaturally demonstrates the power of God to him and still he thinks he can defeat them. Again, God intervenes – the pillar of cloud moved from the front to the end and it blocked, so to speak, the Israelites from the Egyptians. The Pharaoh and his armies had to stand there and wait for at least 12 hours before the cloud had lifted. When they saw the open road through the sea – you must be very stupid to proceed into the sea and think you will still live.

*Then the angel of God, who was going in front of the camp of Israel, moved behind them. The pillar of cloud also moved from in front of them and stood behind them, 20 coming between the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel. The cloud remained there even in the darkness, illuminating the night so that the one side did not come near the other all night.*

**Exodus 14:19-20 ISV**

It was just too late when they realized that it was YEHÔVÂH who is fighting for the Israelites and against them, the Egyptians.

*Their chariot wheels began coming off so that their chariots scraped along the dry ground. "Let's get out of here," the Egyptians yelled. "Jehovah is fighting for them and against us."*

**Exodus 14:25 TLB**

## REASONS FOR HARDNESS OF THE HEARTS

In the Book of Matthew, it gives us the answer why our hearts are hardened.

The KJV used the word "**waxed gross**"

*For this people's heart is **waxed gross** <sup>G3975</sup>, and their **ears are dull** of hearing, and their **eyes they have closed**; lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and should **understand with their heart**, and should be converted, and I should heal them. **Matthew 13:15 KJV***

Waxed gross means to thicken.

### G3975

pachunō

pakh-oo'-no

From a derivative of G4078 (meaning *thick*); to thicken, that is, (by implication) to *fatten* (figuratively *stupefy* or *render callous*): - wax gross.

Waxed gross refers to a method used in making candles in the old days. It was not just a once off process, but you need to put wax on the pit over and over until you got the thickness of the candle. It was a process and it took some time. In other translations, the word "**dull**" was used. It is a lack of interest or excitement. The bottom line is that it will take time to harden your heart, as it will take the time to sensitize again your heart.

*Harden, not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness. **Hebrews 3:8 KJV***

## Sin

Our hearts are hardened because of sin!

*Take heed, brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living God. 13 But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the **deceitfulness of sin**. **Hebrews 3:12-13 KJV***

## Consider

Whatever you consider in your heart becomes sensitive!

*For they considered not the miracle of the loaves: for their heart was hardened. **Mark 6:52 KJV***

What you do not consider, your heart will automatically be hardened to and become therefore insensitive. The word Consider means;

- Study
- Ponder



- Deliberate
- Examine

**We can say that whatever we consider, or study, focus or meditate on will dominate you.** When your heart is “tied to” things you become sensitive to it. Simply put, when people’s hearts are tied to a sport, they will tell you everything about that sport, its players and every small detail of the game. But they can’t remember one single scripture or can reply what they had just read in the Bible. **Why?** Because their hearts were not tied to it.

Just look at the total opposite reaction of Abraham in contrast with the disciples. Against all hope, he believed in hope! He was already 100 years old when God promised him a child. He considered not his body now dead, neither considered he the womb of Sarah dead!

*Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be. 19 And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about a hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sara's womb: 20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; 21 And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.*

**Romans 4:18-21 KJV**

And herein lies the secret and being fully persuaded that what he had promised, he was able also to perform!

## Miracle

Logistically, it was just impossible that the miracle happened in the hands of Jesus. There were 5 000 households and it is logical to assume that after Jesus blessed and broke the bread He gave it to the disciples where they had to feed the adults. So, the miracle had been taking place by the hands of the disciples. But still, they just could not grasp it. They considered not *the miracle* of the loaves: **for their heart was hardened.**

*For they considered not the miracle of the loaves: for their heart was hardened. Mark 6:52 KJV*

Jesus had to get his disciples in the boat – seems as if there was some sort of resistance not to get into the boat.

*And straightway he **constrained his disciples to get into the ship,** and to go to the other side before unto Bethsaida, while he sent away the people. Mark 6:45*

Scripture is not clear why, but we can tell from their experience as a fisherman that they maybe could tell that a storm was on its way. Notice that He constrained his disciples to get in – therefore, Jesus was responsible for them. Also, think about it – they could have raised the flags, turn around and would have been within a few minutes back to from where they came from on dry land. But they did not – because they were doing what Jesus had told them to do. They were following His instructions.

## Expecting Jesus

Adding all these up – it means that these disciples had **seen the miracle** of Jesus feeding the 5000, they were in a situation because of their **obedience**

and if they were **thinking correctly** with their **mind stayed** on the Lord, thinking how powerful He was - then instead of being surprised – they would have expected Him!

This is just the same with us – if we think correctly on the Word of God e.g.;

- No weapon formed against us – Isaiah 54:17
- God healed all of our sicknesses – Psalm 103:3
- Wish that you may prosper in all things – 3 John 1:2
- By His stripes, we were healed – 1 Peter 2:24
- Jesus was doing good, healing all those who were oppressed – Acts 10:38

If we think correctly on these scriptures – then we will not fall apart when the doctor is telling you that you have an incurable disease. It is normal to react first, but it is abnormal according to the scripture. We are born-again – we can operate in the supernatural dimension. We are a spiritual being and not a human being. The storm had occupied them just to survive. The natural circumstances were the main reason for them hardening their hearts. They were so caught up in the storm, that they totally forgot the miracle of the day.

So many of us as are so occupied with our natural circumstances and the natural realm that we totally forget about our supernatural abilities. You are so dominated and controlled by the natural that you are sensitive to the natural and hardened towards the supernatural. It is not that you denied that God could do it for you, but you are so busy surviving day-to-day that you forget to focus on the spiritual realm. You are just human and you know that God has much more in store for you, but you do not know how to get it. Your

heart has been hardened and pre-occupied with the physical realm that you are not focussing on the spiritual realm.

You are just spending too much time in the natural and physical realm. You must take much more time to focus and to consider the Word of God. You can take truths in the Word of God and can throughout the day keep your mind on those scriptures, meditate on it – stay focussed on the meaning of it.

*(For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;) 2Co 10:5 Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ. **2 Corinthians 10:4-5***

**KJV**

The disciples were not living in sin. As a matter of fact, they were just doing what Jesus told them to do. Here they are, in the middle of a storm not “**considering**”. The word considering means:

- Study, ponder, think upon, deliberate, examine, meditate, focus and or dominate.

*For they **considered not the miracle** of the loaves: for their heart was hardened. **Mark 6:52 KJV***

They were so occupied with the storm that they only focused on the natural wisdom and their talents of being fisherman. They just wanted to stay alive. They were just human in the physical realm. Similar to our normal health condition. Most people are only focusing on the natural, eating right, taking in

additional vitamins and minerals. But our bodies are aging and one day we will face a situation where we need more than just physical medication to stay and walk in health. But when we are also walking in the supernatural, you will see people overcome cancer, blind eyes opened and even the dead rise. We are living in the physical realm and hardened to the supernatural realm. That is why we are so limited in our lives because we are only living in the physical realm. We need to make time and exercise to live in the supernatural realm too.

## Abraham & Sarah

God called Abraham out of the land of the Chaldeans and told them never to return. For them returning to that country, would have been sin for Abraham.

*These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth. 14 For they that say such things declare plainly that they seek a country. 15 And truly, if they had been mindful of that country from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to have returned. **Hebrews 11:13-15 KJV***

Looking at verse 15, it says that if Abraham's mind was still in that country, he was tempted considering going back. Put it also into another way: **"You can't be tempted of what you do not think"**.

**Do not think of anything that you do not want to be tempted by!**

If you are tempted with anything it only means that you have been thinking about it. Sometimes, just thinking back on the old days of your life, what could have been – you will be tempted with unbelief. Remember, Abraham never even considered his own body dead in 100 years nor the womb of his wife Sarah when God told them they will have a child.

*And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sara's womb: **Romans 4:19***

Abraham and Sarah only focused on the promised of God. Never considered going back, never considered themselves too old to have a child. The reason why some are so easily drawn into temptation is that you are thinking about it. You are already there in your mind! You can't go to any place of temptation if you are not there in your mind.

## Prayer & Fasting

The disciples already received the power and authority from Jesus and they had exercised it successfully. They rejoiced at some time saying to the Lord: *"even the demons are listening to us"*.

*And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name. **Luke 10:17 KJV***

But then, suddenly at another incident, they just couldn't cast a demon out from a boy.

*Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? **20** And Jesus said unto them, Because of your*

*unbelief: for verily I say unto you, If ye have faith as a grain of mustard seed, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place, and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you. 21 Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting. **Matthew 17:19-21 KJV***

And here Jesus has clearly indicated to them it is because of their unbelief (*note that the NIV is saying “little faith” which is incorrect*). Jesus immediately explained it by referring to the mustard seed – that is the smallest seeds you can find and He was saying you only need that amount to cast these demons out. Therefore, this was not about the little faith or their lack of faith, but because of their unbelief.

When we back up a few verses we see the reaction of Jesus – “*faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you?*”

*And I brought him to thy disciples, and they could not cure him. 17 Then Jesus answered and said, O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him hither to me. **Matthew 17:16-17 KJV***

#### **He saw the inability of his disciples to meet the need of His people.**

Jesus was busy training them to represent Him here on earth and still, they just could not manage to do so. Henceforth, he said: “*faithless and perverse generation – how long shall I still be with you to take care of these things?*” How long will it take for you to grasp these truths, learn it and apply it before I am not with you anymore!

**We must understand the substandards of Christianity today. The Lord is not pleased with us on earth who cannot take care of the needs of the people.**

*When we take the same type of sickness to the average pastor today, he would probably ask what medication the boy is on and that his parents must take him to the medical doctors!*

Society is taking the medical profession and our school system totally to ungodly institutions. It should not be like that. This was all the responsibility of the church – but then government saw the benefit of this and they just “**kidnapped**” it for themselves.

***“I believe that there is a deeper reason for this – and that is because we are all captive and in prison by the word church.”** The word church not merely referred to any religious institution, but rather to God’s government – His Ecclesia!*

*I wrote a teaching: “**The mystery of the Church**” which fully addresses this topic.*

We, the church should never give the responsibility of teaching our children over to a government school. At first, it was ok when the government based their education system on Godly and Biblical principles. This has radically changed as the government now wants to accommodate all religions in one education system – Calling good evil and evil good! This has always been the responsibility of the church – if you do understand what Jesus meant by His ecclesia – but over time we became less and less involved and unable to demonstrate this power the Lord has given to His ecclesia, and as a result the government took over the medical care and education of our society.

*Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter! **Isaiah 5:20 KJV***

Sometimes sickness gets rooted so deep in us, that we not only need physical healing, but also emotional healing in our mind! As a man thinketh, so he will be. Sometimes people get healed, but in their mind, they are still sick! And this is the reason why Jesus asked the father – how long has it been since this came unto him?

*And they brought him unto him: and when he saw him, straightway the spirit tare him; and he fell on the ground, and wallowed foaming. 21 And he asked his father, How long is it ago since this came unto him? And he said, Of a child. 22 And oftentimes it hath cast him into the fire, and into the waters, to destroy him: but if thou canst do anything, have compassion on us, and help us. 23 Jesus said unto him, if thou canst believe, all things are possible to him that believeth. **Mark 9:20-23 KJV***

Now, after the father saw that the disciples could not cast it out – his hope decreased and he said: “**If you can do something**”. Look at Jesus’ words – “**If you can believe**” – in other words, he also had a responsibility to believe for his son’s healing! Even Jesus did not take all the responsibility – He gave some responsibility to the child’s father. You need to start recognizing the power and authority that Jesus has given to us. Use it to get your breakthroughs and miracles!

## Faith

Many may justify themselves by saying that they had faith and believed for a miracle, but it was just not enough – that is why they are still sick. As much as this can be true, we must realize that in direct opposition to this are the forces of unbelief. It cancels one another out.

*Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? 20 And Jesus said unto them, **Because of your unbelief**: for verily I say unto you, If ye have **faith as a grain of mustard seed**, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place; and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you. 21 Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting. **Matthew 17:19-21 KJV***

### FAITH CAN BE CANCELED BY UNBELIEF!

*For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith. **Mark 11:23 KJV***

So, there can be belief and unbelief simultaneously – and if so – it will cancel one another out. This is what happened to Jesus in His home town. He could not do any mighty works because of the unbelief of the people living there.

*And he could there do no mighty work, save that he laid his hands upon a few sick folk, and healed them.<sup>6</sup> And he marvelled because of their unbelief. And he went round about the villages, teaching. **Mark 6:5 KJV***

Jesus also led a blind man out of Bethsaida because of the people's unbelief. He took the man away from the people's unbelief and healed him separately.

*And he cometh to Bethsaida; and they bring a blind man unto him, and besought him to touch him. <sup>23</sup> And he took the blind man by the hand, and **led him out of the town**; and when he had spit on his eyes, and put his hands upon him, he asked him if he saw ought. **Mark 8:22 KJV***

This is important when healing the sick. It was not only up to Jesus, but the person that He healed had to equally believe. And that was why Jesus told the boy's father; **"if you can believe – anything is possible"**

*Jesus said unto him, **if thou canst believe, all things are possible** to him that believeth. **Mark 9:23 KJV***

Bottom line is that even Jesus had to deal with unbelief during His ministry on earth! Just as a little leaven, leaveneth the whole lump, likewise will just a little unbelief stop a lot a faith!

*Your glorying is not good. Know ye not that a **little leaven leaveneth the whole lump?** **1 Corinthians 5:6 KJV***

Just get rid of your unbelief, and if you have **faith as a little mustard seed**, you can move a mountain into the sea, without touching it. That is how powerful faith is if it is not diluted by unbelief!

Faith is the fruit of the Spirit – if you constantly believe in God, you will receive faith. Just as faith comes by hearing and hearing by the Word of God, likewise will unbelief come through hearing – hearing of all the lies of the world!

***So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God. **Romans 10:17 KJV*****

Most people have put a lot more faith in what the doctor said, then what the Word of God tells you! The pastor's message on Sundays at church seems higher than what the Word of God has to say! Many times, parents can influence and manipulate their children in such a way that it can fade out the last little bit of faith they may have for something in their lives. That is the time to stand your ground and believe what God's Word is saying and not what tradition believes.

*Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ. **Colossians 2:8 KJV***

The weapons formed against you will not automatically NOT prosper – you have to condemn it! This is important – the moment you hear something that is spoken against your belief system, you **have to immediately condemn and rebuke it**. You must deal with it immediately.

*No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the LORD, and their righteousness is of me, saith the LORD. **Isaiah 54:17***

If you delay dealing with it, it will over time become diluted and poison your belief system and soon your faith will fade. It is like little seeds taking root

inside of it. Death and life in every tongue – all the words that you are listening to!

*Death and life are in the power of the tongue; and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof. **Proverbs 18:21***

Words of unbelief that you are listening to, are seeds that are entering in and destroy your faith! Stay single minded on what God is saying. We are standing with one foot in the world and trying to stand with the other on the Word of God. This is not single minded but double minded and it is robbing our faith and stopping us from receiving our miracles and operating in the supernatural realm. In the Gospel of Mark, it says and confirms exactly the issue of having faith and unbelief at the same time. In Chapter 9 the boy's father says: "I believe, but help me with my unbelief"

*And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief. **Mark 9:24 KJV***

Most Christians are trying to get more faith. They are getting into the Word, reading and studying it. But very few Christians know that unbelief also comes by hearing. When listening to a lot of negative or wrong messages throughout the day, it contradicts our faith. After studying the Word of God, you can dismiss everything by watching TV for the rest of the day or by listening to the news and negative people.

*I suppose that there are hundreds of different languages in the world, and all are excellent for those who understand them,<sup>11</sup> but to me they mean nothing. A person talking to me in one of these languages will be a stranger to me and I will be a stranger to him. **1 Corinthians 14:10-11 TLB***

## Fasting & Prayer

Probably the most misquoted scripture in the Bible is Matthew 17:21. When reading it, on face value it may sound as if "**this kind**" is referring to the demon, but it is not.

*Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.*

**Matthew 17:21 KJV**

Remember the context of the scripture, which is talking about faith and unbelief. So, when Jesus is talking about "**this kind**" He was not referring to a demon, but to "**this kind of unbelief**". Demons are not listening to the amount of faith you might have, but they must obey the Name of Jesus! There isn't a single demon who will not obey the Name of Jesus!

Unbelief can come through **ignorance**.

You just do not know or have no knowledge of it. If you do not know what the Word says, you will be ignorant of it.

If you are taught the **wrong** thing.

You can have unbelief and not speak in tongues because people are telling you a false doctrine. It is telling half truths to somebody.

The antidote for these would be to just tell the truth.

We have unbelief coming at us through our 5 senses, what we can see, hear, smell, taste and feel. E.g. when you pray for somebody to heal and suddenly the person passes away. The situation got worse! You are hearing and seeing

something that is contrary to your belief system. Those things will just minister unbelief to you.

Likewise, the disciples had a lot of success in the past, but when they saw the boy falling on the ground and into the fire, their 5 senses took over and because of their unbelief they just couldn't cast the demons out.

#### **PRAYER AND FASTING IS THE CURE FOR THIS KIND OF UNBELIEF**

When you start praying to God, you are moving beyond the physical realm and moving into the spiritual realm. Over time you start training your 5 senses that there is more than what you experience through them. We are speaking and praying to a God that we cannot see or hear, but one day suddenly we hear His voice. You have trained yourself over time and then your spiritual senses open. This is what Jesus said how you need to train your senses that they stop fighting you and submit to you to heal the sick.

In today's modern world of technology, we are exposed more and more to all the negative thoughts in our world. The media is not out there to report and influence us in a positive way, but rather to sell sensation which comes with all the problems of the entire world. We can't even handle our own personal problems, but are now facing and hearing all the problems of the entire planet. It will drain and fade out all the faith from a person.

#### **THE HARDEST PEOPLE TO HEAL ARE PEOPLE WITH A MEDICAL BACKGROUND**

It is because they have been trained in unbelief. They learned that if you see this disease, it is incurable and the person has limited time left. To them, there is no room for faith or for the supernatural. They have so much unbelief because of their profession and what they have seen.

#### **This kind of unbelief can only be dealt with prayer and fasting!**

This is profound – Jesus is saying go back to the Word – study it – until your unbelief is been replaced by the Word of God.

*For with God nothing shall be impossible. Luke 1:37 KJV*

It is with prayers and fasting that we get our senses exercised again to get our faith and belief restored to a place where anything is possible for GOD.

*For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. 14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.*

**Hebrews 5:13-14 KJV**

Our appetite is such a strong desire, that it daily stands in our way of discovering spiritual truths. When you haven't eaten anything for a couple of hours, most people get so miserable you can't stand to be around them. When you are fasting, you are denying your flesh! Fasting will afflict you and that is how you overcome. You reach a place where you lose your appetite. It will prove to you that man does not live by bread alone, but by the Word of God.

*But he answered and said, It is written, **Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.** Matthew 4:4 KJV*



---

## "THE HARDENING OF YOUR HEART"

### "A Warning"

---

*We come to the second part of hardness of the heart – the other side of the same coin. This is a part that God dealt with me on the night of 24 May 2017 – He pointed me to Isaiah 6. It made such an impact on me that it went over into ministering to my household and we took communion – that was 28 May 2017. The moment I started to speak, an emotion came over me that is hard to describe – it has never happened before. Afterwards, my daughter came to me and told me what she saw in the spirit. What an amazing experience it was for all of us that day!*

---

#### **From her diary:**

*When my Dad start speaking to us, explaining what the Lord had showed him, while he was talking I saw in the spirit how all of us in the room were on fire. Suddenly I saw Jesus kneel in front of my Dad and remove his shoes. He started to wash his feet with the “water of sanctification”. The sponge He used looked like feathers which were all alive – “feathers of salvation”. While this was happening and fire was still upon all of us in the room, a mighty Angel came to each of us with a great large sword – he touched each and every one of us with his sword. Then Jesus took my Dad in his arms and said: “My dearest son, you are now a new creation in Me”*

*When I received the cup of wine for communion – I saw a white horse and the Lord said it was a “war horse” representing the battle between the spirit, soul (mind) and body! Hence, the necessity for sanctification and purification.*

---

In the Book of Sarah (a 15-year-old child), “*Jubilee – Sounding of the awakening blast of the horn*” she wrote;

### **31 August 2012**

*It is 1:30am as Yeshua woke me up again... I dreamt that I was just standing and I heard a voice asking me, what do you see? I said I see a fire, as I saw a large fire burning in flames... again the voice spoke and asked me, look, what do you see inside the fire? I saw rainbows moving inside the fire like aurora lights!*

*Yeshua started to speak... “Inside the fire is the fullness of My Spirit! There is much wisdom hidden inside of Me, locked up in Me for those who seek My heart! I want My people to focus on Me, love Me and not focus on what I can do for them...*

*Look and see... turn your attention, when your eyes make contact with My eyes you will see what I see. There are many deceptions because people turn their eyes from Me, truth is inside of Me, it's who I am!*

*Let Me tell you something My love, **My heart is burning with passion for My people but they are not entering My sanctifying fire where Holy Spirit can do her refining and purifying work.** I am gentle and I will do it little by little. My people don't think that because I want change in you that I do not accept you already just the way you are! NOTHING can make Me love you more or less, but if you love Me, you will obey Me and allow Me to bring change in your heart! Know the voice of your Shepherd! Through My prophets and messengers, I am crying out in the wilderness that you will prepare the way for Me. I AM the King but My people do not*

---

*obey My commands but they rather listen to news and negativities, they lend out their ears to the things of this world but they don't sit and listen to Me the way they sit in front of the TV. They don't get so caught up in Me the way they get caught up in 'the game', they don't speak to everyone they see about who I am the way they can talk so much about the latest worldly events! Be careful My people of what you observe for it sows seed inside your heart and it will bear fruit...*

*These things I am telling you are to bring My people higher, to open their ears to hear My will because many do not know. It's not to condemn, I don't want to make you feel guilty, I want you to obey. Be teachable My children!*

*My People are so fault finding and have so much unbelief, when I do speak they doubt if they really heard correctly, when I give a gift they say I chose the wrong person, not me Lord! Don't you think I know best? It's because My people focus on their inability and not on Me, don't you think I am able? My people if you would let Me, My Spirit could move powerfully through you! Too long this world has carried on in rebellion, enough now, they have rejected Me enough! The time has come... No one will know the hour, Babylon it will catch by surprise but My bride will know when I am near because she will hear the sound of the trumpet!*

*I truly do not speak to everyone the same... I speak in many different ways for My children I have created each of you differently and know your hearts! If your heart is pure you will hear Me clearly but if your heart is defiled I will speak and it will go unheard because of your soul's clutter,*

*you wouldn't even know I was talking! It's **very** important to purify your hearts, **it is your preparation for My return** because it is where I will pour My oil in for those who wait on Me and who walks in obedience! I cannot pour My oil into a vessel that is full! I can only give extra oil to those who have cleansed their hearts in obedience and humbled and emptied their hearts from the things that defiled it.*

*Do you know why I love it when you wait on Me? It's because you lay aside yourself! I like your silence, there is a time for you to speak and there is a time for you to silence your mind so that I can speak! The way that you enter in is through repentance, **REPENT** and you will see My Kingdom come! Will you also please tell My people the importance of acknowledgement and confessing? It's not the same as repent! You have to search your heart so that you can acknowledge sin and then repent of it. People are so full of pride, they expect Me to deliver when they are supposed to look inside themselves and acknowledge!*

*Don't be like Adam and Eve and hide it from Me in shame and guilt! I am faithful to forgive through the shedding of My Blood! There is only forgiveness of sin through My Blood! My Blood is everything you need! Thus you need to prepare your hearts through Repentance, but you have to acknowledge it to be sorry for it!*

#### **SEED**

*There is seed inside you, My seed! Let Me tell you about seeds... seeds operate through words! When you listen to My words seed are sown into your heart. Those words grow inside of you and it becomes what you put*

*on the altar! Also the words that you observe that are not Me are also sown as seed in you and it also grows and becomes what you sacrifice.*

*Your hearts are the altars that you sacrifice things on daily... what you sacrifice is what you present before Me. When My seed is in your heart you will sacrifice praise and worship, you will be a living sacrifice! But when there is sin seed sown in your heart, what you will bring to the altar will be a sacrifice made to demons and not to Me! They will eat the fruit that you bear, because the seed that was sown in the first place was not My seed! For that reason it is very important to read My Word continually because it is what sows My seed in you and it will produce fruits that is worthy of Me! I feed on the fruits you know, I search the earth for those who present fruit to Me worthy of receiving. I will only feed on something that comes from a pure heart!*

*And then people wonder why even My people have demons... My people are partaking of things that are not from Me, it sows the seed in them and the seed grows into ungodly fruits that you bring to the altar, you feed the demons! If you feed them for too long they will move in because you become their satisfaction! You give them all that they hunger for, so why won't they stay! You are your fruit... present yourselves holy unto Me! For I hunger to eat fruits that praises Me, that is presented to Me in purity! You either bring sacrifices to Me or to demons! Look at Adam and Eve; they sacrificed to the serpent, the devil, because they lend their ears out to words that would lead them to the wrong fruit! Those words the serpent spoke to them was his seed that he sowed into man, because they observed what he said and thought about it, only to become what they*

*did! What you observe becomes what you think, then it becomes what you do and eventually it becomes who you are... the seed comes through whatever you listen to, focus on, partake of and observe, and the sacrificing through the fruit thereof... I long for My people's hearts, mind, will, emotions, words and focus to be a living sacrifice, holy unto Me, that bears My fruit because My seed cannot grow in you if there is no dying to self, just as the promise of what will happen to Abraham's seed could only be fulfilled through laying down...*

*Most assuredly I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls to the ground and dies, it produces much grain! He who loves his life will lose it, and he who hates his life in this world will keep it for eternal life! If anyone serves Me let him follow Me, and where I am there My servant will be also. If anyone serves Me, he My Father will honour! **John 12:24-26***

*People think there has to be no more sacrifices made, I do not ask you to make sacrifices for sin anymore, for I was the perfect sacrifice for sin, but I do ask you to sacrifice, it's not an animal sacrifice, but a heart sacrifice where you lay aside yourself and live in holiness! My promise could only be fulfilled through Abraham's obedience to sacrifice his Son. Isaac was Abraham's seed and his seed had to die for the promise to be fulfilled. For you to receive My abundant life which is My promise to you, a sacrifice of self has to be made. Abraham was willing to sacrifice his, I sacrificed My Son, will you be willing to sacrifice your soul in obedience to Me? Sacrifice is about obedience, you will know from your fruit whether you obey Me because if you do, you will be humble but when you obey the ruler of this world, the serpent, you will bear self-centred fruits.*

**HOLES IN YOUR SOUL**

*My people it's holes in your soul that keeps you from My presence! My anointing comes and goes out of the holes... when will My people stop nagging? When will they see that I HAVE completed everything **but they have to use what I have put in their hands to become whole?** Wholeness is a process; it is not something you receive at salvation! It's a work of My Spirit in you as you allow Me to take you through the painful process. My people you have to allow Me to take out the bee stinger, otherwise there will only be more and more pain and hurt! You have to trust when I tell you to FORGIVE, it's the first step to becoming whole, it's taking out the stinger that injects the poison of bitterness into your heart. Ask Me and I will help you get it out, but then you have to do what I am asking you...*

*Because you belong to Me you are all deadly allergic to the sting of unforgiveness! Blessing is the instrument that I will use to take it out; you just have to allow Me. People will always hurt, reject, neglect, misuse and abuse you but you are Mine and I freely give you the antidote to the deadly sting... you just have to inject it by forgiving and blessing and it can never harm you! Don't put your eyes on man but on Me! This is one step My people has to learn in becoming whole!*

**WORDS OF YOUR MOUTH**

*The words of your mouth are a powerful weapon, it either kills or destroys or it blesses and brings life! I don't like swearing, people think it's just words; it's not, because it doesn't honor Me! Keep your mouth shut if you don't have Me on your lips! If you cannot bless and speak life keep quiet! I*

*honor speech that honors Me. Do you think senseless speaking brings life? NO, it keeps your eyes on circumstances where speaking life keeps your eyes on Me! You will become very quiet when you realize how many of your words do not honor Me! The road is narrow! Do not tell situations or your circumstances over and over to everyone you see, bring them to Me and if you cannot speak life about them, keep your mouth shut! Speaking life is almost always the opposite of what the situation or circumstances are. Life is in Me! When you speak life you speak Me into the situation! I desire to use My people's mouths as instruments and mighty weapons carrying life, authority, blessing and fire but they would not yield to My desire! Please honor Me with your speech through blessing and speaking Life!*

**THE GATES**

*The gates are closing... very soon there will be no more time to enter as those who persevered and endured are waiting and those whose lamps are filled with oil is already inside the gates! It's just those coming in at the last second and then it will be closed for those who have been lukewarm, who was half way there! Inside the gates the marriage feast will take place where the Bridegroom and His bride, that has made herself ready, will be married while the others will have to wait outside until the time comes for Us to return! Those that have only given and restricted Me to fill their spirits with oil, and not the vessel of their soul, cannot enter...you have to surrender and lay down every part of yourself completely. **I have saved their spirits but they would not allow Me to save their souls,** for they continued in their ways...for those will be too late, they will find themselves before a closed door, because they had the chance to but they*

*were marrying and enjoying their soulful lives so much that they would not lay it down!*

*Those who will go to war with Me will overcome by My Blood, the words of their testimony and because they did not love their lives to death! How can I allow a virgin inside who is a virgin but that doesn't give herself to Me?! How can I let her in if she cannot go to war with Me? Those who are ready to go to war with Me have gone through the test in their lives on earth- they overcame by My Blood, the word of their testimony and they have not loved their lives to death therefore they are prepared, for My bride is a warrior bride!*

*How can I allow those in who I know are not able to war with Me because they could not overcome and they did not pass the test! I tell you the truth, not all will enter the marriage feast, only those who have Me in their souls also, whose mind, will and emotions have been emptied of its own and that has surrendered and given it to Me. That has ME in their minds and thoughts that are not conformed to this world but that have been transformed through renewing and who live according to My good, acceptable and perfect will, whose emotions are not controlled by self but by My Spirit. Those are My wise virgins! They took up their cross and did not love their lives too much. She allowed Me to make her soul whole, she laid aside all her filthiness and overflow of wickedness in her heart and she has received with meekness My implanted Word, rooted in her heart and it saved her soul! Those are My true Bride!"*

### **12 September 2012**

*There are important steps to the healing of the soul... Firstly you need to bring your broken, hurt, unsundered soul to Me and lay it down before Me on My altar so that I can shine My light on your heart and reveal to you what is inside. On your journey to freedom and wholeness **FORGIVENESS** is the first step! I can do nothing if you do not forgive... with forgiving comes blessing, blessing is like giving, it breaks the bondage! After forgiving and **blessing** comes **LOVE**! You need something to replace and fill the space in your soul and it's My love! You need to come to Me and receive My love because it is what you need to change your thoughts. My love will enable your heart to change towards whatever you were offended by.*

*Many ask Me to help them forgive and then wait for something supernatural to change in them, **forgiving is a choice to change**. I am the only One, who can change your heart, but I need you to change your thoughts, I cannot change your heart if you do not change your thoughts! You have all the tools in your hands, just start to use them, I long for My people's hearts to be healed so that they can be free.*

*A heart that has been defiled leads to bondage... I died for all to be healed, forgiven, whole, free, saved and redeemed! When you accept Me I come into your spirit and make your spirit new and one with Me. Many only preach on the fact that you ARE healed, forgiven, free, new and that you are **not a sinner anymore when the truth is in your spirit** you are all that [1 John 5:18], but in your **soul** you are **still a sinner**, still unhealed, broken and unsaved until you die to the old man. Why won't they teach My*

people on the importance of surrendering the soul, where I heal the hurts and make you whole, and where your thoughts become one with My thoughts?!

It's a VERY important aspect in your walk with Me, because if your soul has not been healed, surrendered, submitted, sanctified, humbled and made whole you cannot fully receive what I have in store for you! There is a certain way that I do things... My shepherd's are supposed to lead My flock in the truth, in My ways, but they are only focusing on what I have done and not also on what you have to do with what I have given you!

Listen to ME My people, when you hear teachings that are only ever telling you about what I have done and not also teachings on what you have to do with it, then it is not the full truth and you are being led astray. It is not so that you have to do nothing, what I ask of you are obedience. It was not My plan for you to stop at My Grace, move deeper into Who I Am because I am also Holy, I look at the heart and I do see the **rebellion in your soul**. I have saved you but, My Grace does not cover the things in your soul if you don't repent it [Romans 6]! Your soul is not saved by accepting Me, and you will not be safe from the coming things if your soul is not saved, your soul is saved by repenting and by that I mean changing, renewing, transforming, sanctifying and purifying!

My bride is a SPOTLESS bride, I tell you if you have not gone through this process you are lukewarm- warm in your spirit because My Spirit lives there but so cold in your soul because anger, unforgiveness, pride, self-centeredness, rebellion and disobedience lives there. Mix the hot and the cold and you know what I will do with you! There is no more time to hush

hush, there is no more time to sleep and be ignorant and lazy, I am telling you the truth there is no more time. You have to wake up and see the truth according to Me and not your pastor, listen to Me, wake up! I put everything in your hands that you need, many tools like **My Book as your Sword** to cut through your wrong thoughts, attitudes of the heart, wrong beliefs and circumcise your heart, like forgiveness, My Blood, prayer and more.

I am the Potter, My Spirit picked you up and mixed you, you who are dust, with My Spirit, who is living water and made you clay in My hands. I know what My Father likes and I want to mould and change you into a vessel that will honor Him, allow Me! I desire that your soul and spirit may again be one as I made it in the beginning, in unity with Me because there you can freely receive My fullness.

If you miss this very, very important step of working out your salvation through your soul being saved you will miss out on the abundant life that I have planned for you here on earth [John 10:10] because you sit with your one foot in and your other foot out. My daughter tell My people that the old first has to come out, many want to receive what I want to give but they don't get rid of the baggage that holds them back... that is why I allow testing and tribulation because it presses you so that the filthiness can come out! It's like a worm that is inside of you that you picked up because you were in a place, busy with things you were not supposed to be, the worm eats you from the inside and it is your sinful soulish nature... when I allow pressure it pops to the surface, when I allow it please take hold of it through the tweezer of acknowledgment and **TAKE IT OUT by repenting!** Many people don't take it out because from the outside you

*look okay, they cannot see what that thing does to you on the inside and it is too discomfoting to just take it out.*

*When you do take it out that thing will leave an empty space that needs to be filled with My Word and My Truth because it is what will set you free and My Love will heal you! Please hear My words My children and do what I ask of you, it's a matter of being lukewarm where you will have to wait outside, or, being My bride where you go into the marriage feast with Me! The things that you think satisfies your soul on this earth will pass away and then what will you have? Let Me tell you; a title, an achievement, status or money or any material things of this world will help you nothing, I look at your heart and it will be according to what is inside!*

*DO NOT be conformed to this world, to what is good, acceptable and perfect in this world, live according to MY Kingdom!*

## **REBELLED**

Throughout history, humanity rebelled against God. It started in the Garden of Eden and it still continues today. The children of Israel rebelled in the wilderness despite all the miracles and provision of God. Even in the New Testament, the Jews rejected Jesus Christ. It is heart breaking when you follow the scriptures from Genesis to Revelation and see how God with longsuffering and goodness constantly poured out His love to His people. In return, man's heart hardened more and more over time.

It changed my life the moment I realized that God never imputed the sins of this world on mankind!

*Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin.*

## **Romans 4:8 KJV**

God only filled us with the goodness of Jesus Christ and declared us as: **"Not Guilty"!**

*And having chosen us, he called us to come to him; and when we came, he declared us "not guilty," filled us with Christ's goodness, gave us right standing with himself, and promised us his glory. **Romans 8:30 TLB***

We grew up with the wrong theology, were taught that God was mad, and punished the people of the Old Testament. Clearly, scripture is telling us something different:

*We know that it was Adam's sin that caused this[b] because although, of course, people were sinning from the time of Adam until Moses, God did not in those days judge them guilty of death for breaking his laws—because he had not yet given his laws to them nor told them what he wanted them to do. **Roman 5:13***

## **TLB**

No – God did not impute any sin on the human race – but instead sacrificed His Son, Christ Jesus to take upon Him all our sin – and only through Him, we get our right standing before the throne of the Father.

*gave us **right standing with himself**, and promised us his glory.*

## **Romans 8:30b TLB**

When the people stood at the Jordan River and God desired for His people to enter the Promised Land to enter His rest, His joy and in His peace – instead of believing in Him, they rebelled again. And God’s wrath came upon them and sent them back into the wilderness. Thousands of years later, in the book of Hebrews, Scripture still referred to this incident:

*and again in this passage, "THEY SHALL NOT ENTER MY REST."  
Therefore, since it remains for some to enter it, and those who formerly had good news preached to them failed to enter because of disobedience, He again fixes a certain day, "Today," saying through David after so long a time just as has been said before, "TODAY IF YOU HEAR HIS VOICE, DO NOT HARDEN YOUR HEARTS." **Hebrews 3:5-7 TLB***

The GNB version used the words “**stubborn**” and “**rebelled**” like your ancestors.

*So then, as the Holy Spirit says, "If you hear God's voice today, 8 do **not be stubborn**, as your ancestors were when they **rebelled** against God, as they were that day in the desert when they put him to the test. 9 There they put me to the test and tried me, says God, although they had seen what I did for forty. **Hebrews 3:7 GNB***

Because of this stubbornness and rebellious spirit, our hearts hardened and we reached a place of unrepentant hearts.

*But because of your stubbornness and **unrepentant heart** you are storing up wrath for yourself in the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God. **Romans 2:5 GNB***

We are participating in a race and therefore we need to be steadfast unto the end. Do not be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin. When you hear His voice, harden not your hearts.

*But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest **any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.** 14 For we are made partakers of Christ, if we hold the beginning of our confidence **steadfast unto the end;** 15 While it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, **harden not your hearts,** as in the provocation. 16 For some, when they had heard, did provoke: howbeit **not all that came out of Egypt by Moses. Hebrews 3:13 KJV***

And this is what this “**warning**” is all about.

During the night of 24 May 2017, God showed me the vision of Isaiah 6. In my spirit I felt this is the message:

**"Delivering a message of impending disaster to his already doomed fellow children whose persistent hardening of heart has so dulled their moral sensitivity that nothing will prompt them to heed the warning".**

This is the first time God gave me a **message of warning** to his people. I sense that the Body of Christ misunderstood God’s warnings. Hopefully, after the reader discovers the truth God showed me in this regard, the truth will set you free.



## Isaiah's Vision Of The Lord

*In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphim: each one had six wings; with twain, he covered his face, and with twain, he covered his feet, and with twain, he did fly. 3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. 4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. 5 Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; **because I am a man of unclean lips**, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: **for mine eyes have seen the King**, the LORD of hosts. 6 Then flew one of the **seraphim** unto me, having a **live coal in his hand**, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: 7 And he laid it upon my **mouth**, and said, Lo, this hath **touched thy lips**; and **thine iniquity is taken away**, and thy **sin purged**. **Isaiah 6:1-7 KJV***

Warn my people on the earth who were fast ripening for this judgment of hardening (reprobation), for calling them to repentance! As in the days of Isaiah, also today it seems if the call to **repentance is fruitless**, and the children of God hardened themselves. And still now the goodness of God draws His people to Him and tries to lead the people to repentance, and the long-suffering of God has been wantonly abused by the people.

*Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance? **Romans 2:4 KJV***

O, my friend, if you can just see something of God's heart today – His love kindness for you to acknowledge the truth. The truth will set you free.

*In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth; **2 Timothy 2:25 KJV***

In meekness, I bring this message.

## The Vision

In the year, that King Uzziah died the vision was given to the prophet Isaiah because the throne of David was empty. God never empties places in our homes and hearts, or in the nation or the Church, without being ready to fill them. He sometimes empties them that He may fill them. **Sorrow and loss are meant to prepare us for the vision** of God, and their effect should be to purge the inward eye, that we may **see Him**.

- The **essential point of the vision** is the **revelation of Jehovah as king** of Judah.
- That revelation guaranteed **defense** and demanded **obedience**.

The hovering Seraphim was in the attitude of service. The significance of their attitude is visualized;

- “With two he covered his face that he might not see”, and
- “with two he covered his body that he might not be seen” and
- “with two he stood ready for service, by flight whithersoever the King would send. “

Such awe-stricken reverence, such humble hiding of self, such alacrity for swift obedience, such flaming ardors of love and devotion, **should be ours**. Their song celebrated the holiness and the glory of YEHOVAH of hosts. We must ever remember that the root-meaning of '**holiness**' is **separation**, and that the popular meaning of **moral purity** is secondary and derivative.

- That **separation**, of course, includes **purity**, as may be seen from the immediate effect of the vision of the prophet, but the conception is much wider than that.
- God's 'glory' is the flashing lustre of His manifested holiness, which fills the earth as the train of the robe filled the temple.

#### The effect of the vision on the prophet

The vision kindled as with a flash Isaiah's **consciousness of sin**.

- He expressed it in regard to his **words** rather than his **works**, partly because in one aspect **speech is even more accurately than act a cast**, as it were, of character.
- Not only the **consciousness of sin**, but the dread of **personal evil consequences from the vision of the holy God**, oppressed his heart. We see ourselves when we see God.

**Once flash on a heart the thought of God's holiness, and, like an electric searchlight, it discloses flaws which pass unnoticed in dimmer light.** The easy-going Christianity, which is the apology for religion with so many of us, **have no deep sense of sin** because it has **no clear vision of God**.

*"I have heard of Thee by the hearing of the ear; but now my eye seeth Thee: wherefore I abhor myself, and repent in dust and ashes." Job 42:6*

#### Then flew one of the seraphim unto me —

*By God's command; having a live coal in his hand — Both a token and an instrument of **purification**, as the next verse explains it; which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar — of burnt-offering, which stood in the court of the priests, where the prophet appeared to himself to be the vision.*

*The seraph took it from the altar, to show that men are to expect the expiation of sin, and purification from it, only by such means as God hath appointed, and particularly by the mediation of Christ, whom that altar manifestly represented, and by that purifying and refining grace of the Holy Spirit, which was signified by this live coal, and is conferred on none except through the merit of Christ's sacrifice*

#### Sin Recognised

The next stage in Isaiah's experience is that **sin recognized and confessed is burned away**.

- **Cleansing** rather than **forgiveness** is here emphasized
- The latter is, of course, included, but the main point is the **removal of impurity**

It is mediated by one of the seraphim, who is the messenger of God, which is just a symbolical way of saying that God makes penitents 'partakers of His holiness,' and that nothing less than a **divine communication will make cleansing possible**.

- It is affected by a live coal
- Fire is purifying, and the New Testament has taught us that the true **cleansing fire** is that of the **Holy Spirit**

- But that live coal was taken from the altar. The atoning sacrifice has been offered there, and our cleansing depends on the efficacy of that sacrifice being applied to us

And he laid it upon my mouth — so as only to touch my lips, and not to burn them. All vain-glory, *ambition, ignorance, and pride*, would be done away with one view of Christ in His glory. We are undone if there is not a **Mediator** between us and this holy God. A glimpse of heavenly glory is enough to convince us that all our righteousness are as filthy rags. (**Isaiah 64:6**). Nor is there a man that would dare to speak to the Lord, if he saw the **justice, holiness, and majesty of God**, without **discerning** his glorious **mercy and grace in Jesus Christ**. The live coal may denote the assurance given to the prophet, of pardon, and acceptance in his work, through the atonement of Christ. Nothing is powerful to cleanse and comfort the soul, but what is taken from Christ's satisfaction and intercession.

This was done to signify, not only that all the gifts and graces that purify the mind and fit us for the discharge of any particular duty or function, come from God; but that there must be a real application and communication of them to our souls. It is not sufficient that we **hear, think, and speak of them**; or even that we desire them, and believe them to be attainable; but we **must really receive and possess them**. Observe this, reader. It is of infinite consequence to thy salvation.

Lo, this hath touched thy lips, and thy iniquity is taken away —

- This is a sign that the **guilt of thy sin is removed** by pardoning mercy, and thy corrupt disposition and inclination to sin, by renewing grace; and, therefore, **nothing can hinder** thee from

being accepted of God, as a worshipper, in concert with the holy angels; or from being employed by God, as a messenger to the children of men.

The **taking away sin** is **necessary to our speaking** with **confidence and comfort, either to God in prayer, or from God in preaching**; and those shall have their sin taken away who complain of it as a burden, and see themselves in danger of being undone by it. It is a great comfort to those whom God sends, that they go for God, and may, therefore, speak in his name, assured that he will bear them out.

### **Readiness for Service**

The third stage in the prophet's experience is the **readiness for service** which springs up in his purged heart. God seeks for volunteers. There are no pressed men in His army. The previous experiences made Isaiah quick to hear God's call, and willing to respond to it by personal consecration. Take the motive-power of redemption from sin out of Christianity, and you break its mainspring so that the clock will only tick when it is shaken. It is the Christ who died for our sins to whom men say, "Command what Thou wilt, and I obey".

## **The Prophet's Commission**

He was not sent to his work with any illusions as to its success, but, on the contrary, he had a clear premonition that its effect would be to deepen the **spiritual deafness and blindness of the nation**. We must remember that in Scripture the certain effect of divine acts is uniformly regarded as a divine design. Israel was so sunk in **spiritual deadness** that the issue of the prophet's work would only be to immerse the mass of 'this people' farther in it. To some

more **susceptible souls**, his message would be a true divine voice, rousing them like a trumpet, and that effect was what God desired; but to the **greater number, it would deepen their torpor and increase their condemnation. If men love darkness rather than light, the coming of the light works and only judgment.**

Isaiah recoils from the dreary prospect and feels that this dreadful hardening cannot be God's ultimate purpose for the nation. So, he humbly and wistfully asks how long it is to last. The answer is twofold;

- Heavy with a weight of apparently utter ruin in its first part, but disclosing a faint, far-off gleam of hope on its second.
- **Complete destruction**, and the **casting of Israel out from the land**, are to come.

But as, though a **goodly tree is felled**, a **stump remains** which has vital force {or substance} in it, so, even in the utmost apparent desperateness of Israel's state, there will be in it '**the holy seed**,' the '**remnant**,' the **true Israel**, from which again the **life shall spring**, and stem and branches and waving foliage once more **grow up**.

Directly after this message of Isaiah 3, the Lord pointed me to Ezekiel 3

### EZEKIEL 3

As Isaiah must remember that Israel was so sunk in spiritual deadness that the issue of his works would only be to immerse the mass of this people farther in

it, likewise must Ezekiel also deliver a message – not to far-off foreign land where he could not understand the language – but to the people of Israel!

### Ezekiel 3 Living Bible (TLB)

<sup>3</sup> And he said to me: "Son of dust, eat what I am giving you—***eat this scroll! Then go and give its message to the people of Israel.***"

<sup>2</sup> So I took the scroll. <sup>3</sup> "Eat it all," he said. And when I ate it, it ***tasted sweet as honey.*** <sup>4</sup> Then he said: "Son of dust, I am sending you to the people of Israel with my messages. <sup>5</sup> I am not sending you to some far-off foreign land where you can't understand the language— <sup>6</sup> no, not to tribes with strange, difficult tongues. (If I did, they would listen!) <sup>7</sup> I am sending you to the ***people of Israel***, and they won't listen to you any more than they listen to me! For the ***whole lot of them are hard, impudent, and stubborn.***

As these people are stubborn and hard, so did God made Ezekiel hard and stubborn too, so that he can't be afraid of them even when they have angry looks.

<sup>8</sup> But see, I have made you hard and stubborn too—as tough as they are. <sup>9</sup> I have made your forehead as hard as rock. So don't be afraid of them, or fear their sullen, angry looks, even though they are such rebels."

Just as Isaiah, Ezekiel must deliver a message: "***This is what the Lord God says***"

<sup>10</sup> Then he added: “Son of dust, let all my words sink deep into your own heart first; listen to them carefully for yourself. <sup>11</sup> Then, afterward, go to your people in exile, and whether or not they will listen, tell them: **‘This is what the Lord God says!’**” <sup>12</sup> Then the Spirit lifted me up, and the glory of the Lord began to move away, accompanied by the sound of a great earthquake. <sup>13</sup> It was the noise of the wings of the living beings as they touched against each other, and the sound of their wheels beside them. <sup>14-15</sup> The Spirit lifted me up, and took me away to Tel Abib, another colony of Jewish exiles beside the Chebar River. I went in bitterness and anger, but the hand of the Lord was strong upon me. And I sat among them, overwhelmed, for seven days.

The message was very strong from the Lord – if you do not warn my people, then you are under the penalty of death and I will punish you.

<sup>16</sup> At the end of the seven days, the Lord said to me: <sup>17</sup> “Son of dust, I have appointed you as a **watchman for Israel**; whenever I send my people a warning, pass it on to them at once. <sup>18</sup> If you **refuse to warn the wicked when I want you to tell them, ‘You are under the penalty of death; therefore repent and save your life,’** they will die in their sins, but I will punish you. I will demand your blood for theirs.

But, says the Lord, if you warn them and they still do not repent, then they will die in their sins, but you are blameless!

<sup>19</sup> But if you warn them, and they keep on sinning and refuse to repent, they will die in their sins, but you are blameless—you

have done all you could. <sup>20</sup> And if a good man becomes bad, and you refuse to warn him of the consequences, and the Lord destroys him, his previous good deeds won’t help him—he shall die in his sin. **But I will hold you responsible for his death and punish you.** <sup>21</sup> But if you warn him and he repents, he shall live, and you have saved your own life too.”

Furthermore, the Lord told Ezekiel that He will make his tongue stick to the roof of his mouth so that he can’t reprove – but when there is a message to deliver, then the Lord will loosen his tongue.

<sup>22</sup> I was helpless in the hand of God, and when he said to me, “Go out into the valley and I will talk to you there”— <sup>23</sup> I arose and went, and oh, I saw the glory of the Lord there, just as in my first vision! And I fell to the ground on my face. <sup>24</sup> Then the Spirit entered into me and set me on my feet. He talked to me and said: “Go, imprison yourself in your house, <sup>25</sup> and I will paralyze you so you can’t leave; <sup>26</sup> and I will make your tongue stick to the roof of your mouth so that you can’t reprove them; for they are rebels. <sup>27</sup> **But whenever I give you a message, then I will loosen your tongue and let you speak,** and you shall say to them: ‘The Lord God says.’ Let anyone listen who wants to, and let anyone refuse who wants to, for they are rebels. **TLB**

## The Message of Paul

Then the Lord pointed me to the message of Apostle Paul in Romans 1.

**Notice how Paul makes a distinction between the flesh and the Spirit of Jesus?**

<sup>3</sup> [The Gospel] regarding His Son, Who as to the flesh (His human nature) was descended from David, <sup>4</sup> And [as to His divine nature] according to the Spirit of holiness was openly designated the Son of God in power [in a striking, triumphant and miraculous manner] by His resurrection from the dead, even Jesus Christ our Lord (the Messiah, the Anointed One). <sup>5</sup> It is through Him that we have received grace (God's unmerited favor) and [our] apostleship to promote obedience to the faith and make disciples for His name's sake among all the nations, <sup>6</sup> And this includes you, called of Jesus Christ and invited [as you are] to belong to Him. **Romans 1 Amplified Bible, Classic Edition (AMPC)**

Similar, you are in the flesh a descendant from your earthly father and mother!

Our human body is flesh and born out of a corruptible seed;

*"That which is **born of the flesh is flesh**; and that which is **born of the Spirit is a spirit (John 3:6).***

That is why we need to be born again of the Spirit to be saved;

*"Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, except a man be **born of water and of the Spirit**, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God (John 3:5).*

Our mortal body must put on the spirit which is immortal and this corruptible body must put on incorruption to enter internal life: *"For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality (1 Corinthians 15:53).* I love you so much and never even imputing your sins on you (God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation **2 Corinthians 5:19**). But, Paul referred to Jesus also as to His divine nature according to the Spirit of holiness, raised from the dead that we received the everlasting grace which opens the door to eternal life. There is a **mystery** - a revelation hidden from all ages and generations that **Christ is in YOU!**

*Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints: 27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory: **Colossians 1:26-27 KJV***

These are profound truths! Paul is revealing the mystery, the revelation hidden for many ages – but now we know: **"Christ is in you"**. You are a **new creature**: *"Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things become new" (2 Corinthians 5:17).* **Perfectly made**; *"That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works (2 Timothy 3:17)* and having now the **mind of Christ**; *"For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ (1 Corinthians 2:16).* You now have **"The measure of Faith"**,

which is the same faith Jesus had on earth – “according to as God hath dealt with every man the measure of faith (**Romans 12:3**). Your newborn spirit is as perfect as Christ, vacuum packed and **sealed with the Holy Spirit** and will never change again: “*In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise* (**Ephesians 1:13**).

Now God announced it: “it includes YOU”. Jesus called you and invited you as you to belong to Him!

*And this includes you, called of Jesus Christ and invited [as you are] to belong to Him. Romans 1:6*

Then Paul made a very important announcement, in this context, which I shall explain as we move on. He said: “**I am willing and eagerly ready to preach the Gospel to you**”. Similar to Isaiah, when he saw the Glory of God and when God purified him, Isaiah immediately became a volunteer as Paul to go and warn the children of Israel and to preach the Gospel – the good news. *What good news?*

For it is God’s power – His resurrection power – that works unto salvation for deliverance from eternal death.

<sup>15</sup> *So, for my part, I am willing and eagerly ready to preach the Gospel to you also who are in Rome.* <sup>16</sup> *For I am not ashamed of the Gospel (good news) of Christ, for it is God’s power working unto salvation [for deliverance from eternal death] to everyone who believes with a personal trust and a confident surrender and firm reliance, to the Jew first and also to the Greek,* <sup>17</sup> *For in the Gospel a righteousness which God ascribes is revealed, both*

*springing from faith and leading to faith [disclosed through the way of faith that arouses to more faith]. As it is written, the man who through faith is just and upright shall live and shall live by faith. Romans 1:15-17 TLB*

If you are still walking after the flesh it leads to death.

*Rom 7: <sup>14</sup> We know that the Law is spiritual; but I am a creature of the flesh [carnal, unspiritual], having been sold into slavery under [the control of] sin. <sup>15</sup> For I do not understand my own actions [I am baffled, bewildered]. I do not practice or accomplish what I wish, but I do the very thing that I loathe [which my moral instinct condemns]. AMP*

*Gal 5: <sup>19</sup> And the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, <sup>20</sup> Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, <sup>21</sup> envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. AMP*

So Flesh is everything that is not born-again and not under the control of the Holy Spirit.

*For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Romans 8:6 KJV*

In verse 16 Paul says that he is not ashamed of the Gospel. In essence he says that he discovered the truth, it is good news for us and for that he is not

ashamed because when it comes in meekness to us, it is for our correction and for our eternal life.

And this is precisely what Paul is doing when he continues.

*<sup>18</sup>For God's [holy] wrath and indignation are revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who in their wickedness repress and hinder the truth and make it inoperative. <sup>19</sup>For that which is known about God is evident to them and made plain in their inner consciousness, because God [Himself] has shown it to them. <sup>20</sup>For ever since the creation of the world His invisible nature and attributes, that is, His eternal power and divinity, have been made intelligible and clearly discernible in and through the things that have been made (His handiworks). So [men] are without excuse [altogether without any defence or justification],*

Just look at the words in TLB (The Living Bible) translation:

*<sup>18</sup>But God shows his **anger from heaven against all sinful, evil men who push away the truth from them.** <sup>19</sup>For the truth about God is known to them **instinctively**; God has put this **knowledge in their hearts.** <sup>20</sup>Since earliest times men have seen the earth and sky and all God made, and have known of his existence and great eternal power. So they will have **no excuse when they stand before God at Judgment Day.** TLB*

Paul says that the truth about God is known by us **instinctively**. God has put this knowledge in our hearts!

The English Oxford Living Dictionary defines "instinctively" as:

*"A person doing or being a specified thing apparently **naturally or automatically**"*

And the Free Dictionary by Farlex;

*These adjectives refer to things that arise from a natural tendency or impulse: an instinctive desire to help others; an **instinctual respect for authority**; an **intuitive feeling that something is wrong**; a visceral reaction to the scandalous news.*

I pray that you receive an understanding of this:

**God put it in nature and automatically in your heart, the moment He breathed in the nostrils the breath of life, the knowledge of Him so you have an intuitive feeling that something is wrong! (And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul. Genesis 2:7 KJV)**

**Why?**

**So you will have no excuse when you stand before God at**

**Judgment Day.**

Paul continues: ***Because God instinctively puts the truth in your heart, you knew and recognized Him as God.*** BUT many do not honor and glorify Him as God or give Him thanks.

*<sup>21</sup>Because when they knew and recognized Him as God, they did not honor and glorify Him as God or give Him thanks. But instead they became futile and godless in their thinking [with vain imaginings, foolish reasoning, and stupid speculations] and their*



*senseless minds were darkened. <sup>22</sup>Claiming to be wise, they became fools [professing to be smart, they made simpletons of themselves].*

But instead – instead of honouring and worshipping God or thanking Him for His daily care (as The Living Bible says it) they became godless, foolish in reasoning, stupid speculations and silly ideas of what God was like and what He wanted them to do. So, the result of this is that their foolish minds became dark and confused. Because of a darkened mind, they claim themselves to be wise without God and became utter fools instead.

*<sup>21</sup>Yes, they knew about him all right, but they wouldn't admit it or worship him or even thank him for all his daily care. And after a while, they began to think up **silly ideas of what God was like and what he wanted them to do.** The result was that their foolish minds became dark and confused. <sup>22</sup>Claiming themselves to be wise without God, they became utter fools instead. TLB*

Please note that this is Paul – God's word – and not any of my own words or any opinion. When you reach this point – the point of reasoning God out of the equation, then you have exchanged Him for idols.

*<sup>23</sup>And by them the glory and majesty and excellence of the immortal God were exchanged for and represented by images, resembling mortal man and birds and beasts and reptiles. AMPC*

*<sup>23</sup>And then, instead of worshiping the glorious, ever-living God, they took wood and stone and **made idols for themselves**, carving them to look like mere birds and animals and snakes and puny men. TLB*

But this is where **human reasoning** kicks in. Most believers will immediately defend themselves saying that they do not have any idols.

#### Is that true?

Anything that requires or takes more time for you to do than the time you spend with God, is your idol. I know these are hard words, but it is the truth. Unfortunately, this is not where it stops. Paul goes on and explains what happens next. God gave them up to the lusts of their own hearts.

*<sup>24</sup>Therefore God gave them up in the lusts of their [own] hearts to sexual impurity, to the dishonoring of their bodies among themselves [abandoning them to the degrading power of sin], <sup>25</sup>Because they exchanged the truth of God for a lie and worshiped and served the creature rather than the Creator, Who is blessed forever! Amen (so be it).*

The **lust** of the **eyes**, the lust of the **body** and the **pride** of **life** is what conceived sin. You can lust for many things. Let's rather quote scripture than give you a list of my own thoughts:

*Stop loving this evil world and all that it offers you, for when you love these things you show that you do not really love God; <sup>16</sup>for all these **worldly things**, these **evil desires**—the **craze for sex**, the **ambition to buy everything that appeals to you**, and the **pride that comes from wealth and importance**—these are not from God. They are from this evil world itself. <sup>17</sup>And this world is fading away, and these evil, forbidden things will go with it, but whoever keeps doing the will of God will live forever. 1 John 2:15-17 KJV*

This is the Apostle Paul speaking here with similar very direct and hard words:

***“Stop loving this evil world and all that it offers to you”***

Again, TLB translation says that they go ahead into every sort of sex.

*<sup>24</sup>So God let them go ahead into every sort of sex sin, and do whatever they wanted to—yes, vile and sinful things with each other’s bodies. <sup>25</sup>Instead of believing what they knew was the truth about God, they deliberately chose to believe lies. So they prayed to the things God made, but wouldn’t obey the blessed God who made these things. TLB*

Instead of believing what they knew was the truth about God, they deliberately chose to believe lies. When you reach this point, men and woman even give up the natural plan God intended for them – **woman exchanged their natural function for an unnatural and abnormal one, burned with lust for each other and men doing shameful things with other men.**

*<sup>26</sup>For this reason God gave them over and abandoned them to vile affections and degrading passions. For their women exchanged their natural function for an unnatural and abnormal one, <sup>27</sup>And the men also turned from natural relations with women and were set ablaze (burning out, consumed) with lust for one another—men committing shameful acts with men and suffering in their own bodies and personalities the inevitable consequences and penalty of their wrong-doing and going astray, which was [their] fitting retribution.*

And now they are suffering in their bodies and personalities the consequences and penalty of their wrong-doing – a penalty in their own souls.

*<sup>26</sup>That is why God let go of them and let them do all these evil things, so that even their women turned against **God’s natural plan for them and indulged in sex sin with each other.** <sup>27</sup>And the men, **instead of having normal sex relationships with women, burned with lust for each other, men doing shameful things with other men** and, as a result, getting paid within their own souls with the penalty they so richly deserved. TLB*

Their **hearts are hardened** to such an extent that they do not acknowledge God or approve of Him or consider Him worth knowing. So God decided at this point to give them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient.

*And even as they did not like to retain **God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate<sup>G96</sup> mind, to do those things which are not convenient; Romans 1:28***

#### G96

adokimos

ad-ok'-ee-mos

From G1 (as a negative particle) and G1384; *unapproved*, that is, *rejected*; by implication *worthless* (literally or morally): - **castaway, rejected**, reprobate.

The word **“reprobate”** in the original Greek is **“adokimos”** which means rejected, castaway and by implication worthless – literally and morally! When you decide to **reject your salvation** - they can never come back into salvation

again. Giving them over to a reprobate mind - God takes away the conviction of the Holy Spirit.

Reprobate - means "**Beyond Hope**"

You aren't convicted of your need for relationship with the Lord unless the Holy Spirit is dealing with you - John 6:44.

**As long as He's dealing with you - you aren't reprobate!!**

**However - if someone fulfils the qualifications of Hebrews 6 - and renounces their salvation - then God takes the Holy Spirit away and they become reprobate**

Without conviction - they no longer know what they are doing wrong. Not only do they like it - but they like all those who are in rebellion against God too. Reprobates display a total lack of desire and response toward the Lord. **Are you repenting and sorry for what you've done? - Do you desire to be in relationship with the Lord - if so - YOU are not reprobate!** The Holy Spirit is still dealing with you. Like Paul - you are forgiven because you were ignorant when you did those things - praise God - He's your loving heavenly Father!

It means God gave them over to do whatever they wish to do – everything that comes in their minds: “covetous greed, envy, jealousy, murder, strife, backbiters and gossipers and even hating God.

*<sup>28</sup>And so, since they did not see fit to acknowledge God or approve of Him or consider Him worth the knowing, God gave them over to a base and condemned mind to do things not proper or decent but loathsome, <sup>29</sup>Until they were filled*

*(permeated and saturated) with every kind of unrighteousness, iniquity, grasping and covetous greed, and malice.*

*[They were] full of envy and jealousy, murder, strife, deceit and treachery, ill will and cruel ways. [They were] secret backbiters and gossipers, <sup>30</sup>Slanderers, hateful to and hating God, full of insolence, arrogance, [and] boasting; inventors of new forms of evil, disobedient and undutiful to parents. <sup>31</sup>[They were] without understanding, conscienceless and faithless, heartless and loveless [and] merciless. <sup>32</sup>Though they are fully aware of God's righteous decree that those who do such things deserve to die, they not only do them themselves but approve and applaud others who practice them. AMPC*

**The message from God is clear:**

- The people reach a stage of spiritual deafness and blindness.
- There are still susceptible souls who will listen to the warning of God's voice, but to the greater number of people, it would increase their condemnation.
- If men love darkness rather than light, the coming of the light works only judgment.

**From this, God enlightened my understanding of His judgment**

- God's judgment is always there for correction and for purification.
- With purification comes separation – meaning that you are now holy and separated for God's purpose only.
- But, if a people's heart is hardened to such a nature that they turned away from God, complete destruction is the consequences of His judgment.

**Why?**

Paul gives us the answer in 1 Corinthians – that such a man to be given over into the hands of Satan for punishment in the hope that his soul is saved when the Lord Jesus Christ returns! God is more interested in your salvation as in your fleshly body.

*And cast out this man from the fellowship of the church and into Satan's hands, to punish him, in the hope that his soul will be saved when our Lord Jesus Christ returns. 1 Corinthians 5:5 TLB*

***The KJV says to deliver such a one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus (1Co 5:5 KJV).***

Again, Paul addressed the act of abomination and fornication among the people.

*It is reported commonly that there is fornication among you, and such fornication as is not so much as named among the Gentiles, that one should have his father's wife. 2 And ye are puffed up and have not rather mourned, that he that hath done this deed might be taken away from among you. 3 For I verily, as absent in body, but present in spirit, have judged already, as though I were present, concerning him that hath so done this deed, 4 In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, when ye are gathered together, and my spirit, with the power of our Lord Jesus Christ, 5 To deliver such an one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus.*

**1 Corinthians 5:1-5 KJV**

But as, though a **goodly tree is felled**, a **stump remains** which has vital force {or substance} in it, so, even in the utmost apparent desperateness of the people's state, there will be in it '**the holy seed**,' the '**remnant**,' the **true spiritual you**, from which again the **life shall spring**, and stem and branches and waving foliage once more **grow up**. IF you turn back to your God – our Lord Jesus Christ!

**For Paul started by saying in Rom 1 that he is not ashamed of the Gospel and he is bringing the good news – even realizing that this Gospel may bring severe pain and hurt, he is glad for it as the pain turned you back to God!**

*I am no longer sorry that I sent that letter to you, though I was very sorry for a time, realizing how painful it would be to you. But it hurt you only for a little while. 9 Now I am glad I sent it, not because it hurt you but because the pain turned you to God. It was a good kind of sorrow you felt, the kind of sorrow God wants*

his people to have, so that I need not come to you with harshness. 10 For God sometimes uses sorrow in our lives to help us **turn away from sin and seek eternal life**. We should never regret his sending it. But the sorrow of the man who is not a Christian is not the sorrow of true repentance and does not prevent eternal death. **2 Corinthians 7:8 KJV**

**Now you can get rid of the sin in your life and rejoice in eternal life.**

<sup>11</sup> Just see how much good this grief from the Lord did for you! You no longer shrugged your shoulders but became earnest and sincere and very anxious to **get rid of the sin** that I wrote you about. You became frightened about what had happened and longed for me to come and help. You went right to work on the problem and cleared it up, punishing the man who sinned. You have done everything you could to make it right. <sup>12</sup> I wrote as I did so the Lord could show how much you really do care for us. That was my purpose even more than to help the man who sinned or his father to whom he did the wrong. TLB

**The AMP version:**

For even though I did grieve you with my letter, I do not regret it [now]; though I did regret it --for I see that the letter hurt you, though only for a little while-- 9 yet I am glad now, not because you were hurt and made sorry, but because your sorrow led to repentance [and you turned back to God]; for you felt a grief such as God meant you to feel, so that you might not suffer loss in anything on our account. 10 For [godly] sorrow that is in

accord with the will of God produces a repentance without regret, leading to salvation; but worldly sorrow [the hopeless sorrow of those who do not believe] produces death. 11 For [you can look back and] see what an earnestness and authentic concern this godly sorrow has produced in you: what vindication of yourselves [against charges that you tolerate sin], what indignation [at sin], what fear [of offending God], what longing [for righteousness and justice], what passion [to do what is right], what readiness to punish [those who sin and those who tolerate sin]! At every point you have proved yourselves to be innocent in the matter. 12 So even though I wrote to you [as I did], it was not for the sake of the offender nor for the sake of the one offended, but in order to make evident to you before God how earnestly you do care for us [and your willingness to accept our authority]. **2Corinthians 7:8-12 AMP**



## Part 3 Be Aware of your Spirit, Soul & Body

In Part 1 we dealt with the issue of how believers can be under the influence of demons. It does not have to do with ownership, but you become under the influence of these spirits. There are many spirits, and all of them are significant (1 Corinthians 14:10) and when you listen to these voices you become a slave to whom you yield to (Rom 6:16). Paul clearly warned us in the New Testament to beware of the Chaldeans, demons that are looking for open places to dwell in. The devil is the father of lies and he is a thief (John 10:10; John 8:44), therefore his army of demons are stealing God's Houses who does not belong to them (Ps 83:12).

Jesus also came and taught us, showing us in various scriptures how sons and daughters of Abraham (believers) were bound by demons and that He had come for their deliverance (John 8:31-47; Luke 13:11-17; Mark 7:24-30).

In John 8, Jesus made a profound statement - He said that these servants abide not in the house forever, but I - the Son of God abide forever! That means you have to get rid of the squatters in your house!

*And the servant abideth not in the house for ever: but the Son abideth ever. **John 8:35***

Then in Part 2 we dealt with the issue of hardness of our hearts. Not only does it have to do with those who are unbelievers and do not want to listen to Christ, but to the believers who do not considering the supernatural more of a reality than the natural. When hearts are hardened, it becomes increasingly

difficult to identify hidden sin in us. Therefore, instead of yielding to the Word of God, a harden heart will cause us to be blinded by the god of this world who withholds us from truly being sanctified and purified for the Bridegroom who is coming for His Bride.

As the Lord showed Sarah that our souls are not yet redeemed when we gave our hearts to the Lord and made it unto salvation and that we need to work out our own salvation daily!

*Therefore, my dear ones, as you have always obeyed [my suggestions], so now, not only [with the enthusiasm you would show] in my presence but much more because I am absent, work out (cultivate, carry out to the goal, and fully complete) your own salvation with reverence and awe and trembling (self-distrust,<sup>[1]</sup> with serious caution, tenderness of conscience, watchfulness against temptation, timidly shrinking from whatever might offend God and discredit the name of Christ).*

### **Philippians 2:12 AMPC**

So, before we can get rid of these squatters in your house, and to understand the beginning of the renewing of your mind to change the condition of your heart, we first need to have a clear understanding of who we really are.

From experience I can tell you how confused I was when people spoke about the soul and the spirit. They used terminology and mixed it in such a way that nobody would be able to grasp scriptures and get deliverance. When I read the book of **Andrew Wommack - Spirit, Soul and Body** and the book of **Dr. Henry Wright - A More Excellent Way, Be in Health** and listened to the ministry of **Katie Souza - Healing your wounded soul**, a new world opened up to me and my own deliverance came. Freely I received and freely I shall give -

this is to help you to get free and to get rid of all the squatters in your house, as I did. Isn't it interesting that Jesus combines this with healing the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead and casting out devils? Yes, you can believe it today - this is the Father's heart for you and me even for today!

*Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils:  
freely ye have received, freely give. **Matthew 10:8 KJV***

After understanding spirit, soul, and body, the rest will just fall into place and you will be delivered. That is the good news of the Gospel.

## Understanding Spiritual Being

In this section, I'd like to give enough background to the reader to understand and to distinguish between the spirit, soul and body from a Biblical perspective and not what psychology defines it as. The Bible is the only source that explains the truth. In 1 Thessalonians 5 it clearly states that we are spirit, soul, and body.

*And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly, and I pray God  
your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto  
the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. **1 Thessalonians 5:23 KJV***

From the beginning the Lord confirms this for us. When God formed man of the dust of the ground, there was no life, until He breathed His Ruach into his nostrils – the breath of life.

*And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and  
breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a  
living soul. **Genesis 2:7 KJV***

When you are looking in a mirror you only see a reflection of your face. You have to believe what your eyes are telling you. You cannot see your own face – it is only a reflection. Likewise, we need to look into scriptures to see a reflection of who we are in the spirit. Similarly, when the Bible tells you something about your spirit, you have to believe what you read. We are a **spirit** (*technically speaking we are - well at least after you are born-again - not a human being, but a spiritual being*), with a **soul**, walking around in a **body**. Our bodies are just our earthly suits to walk us around on earth.

*For we know that if the **earthly tent** [our physical body] which is  
our house is torn down [through death], we have a building from  
God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.*

### **2 Corinthians 5:1**

Our soul consists out of our mind, emotion, will and sub-conscious. As we will see later on, the **carnal mind** (soul) can only base information on your **five senses**, namely your **sight, smell, taste, hearing, and feelings**. These senses have nothing to do with your spirit, as we cannot see, smell, taste, hear or feel our spirit. So, you can only feel your soul and body, but not your spirit. When something happened in your spirit - you can't feel it. That is why your carnal mind is always telling you that nothing has happened. This is a lie! We need to get our carnal mind out of the way.

Anything happening in our **spirit** is based on **FAITH** and not on any feelings or emotions. That's why we need to get our mind - our flesh - our carnal mind

out of the way. You can feel your body and you can feel your soul. I can also throw words to you that will hurt you without physically touching your body. Speaking to your soul, I can make you glad, sad or mad. It is easy to know how you feel in your body and soul because you're constantly in touch with them. Our bodies are constantly feeding us with information on how we feel. The same with our souls - we know that we are happy or hurt - mentally worn out or sharp and ready to go or just plain angry. You'd even be aware of fear and depression - because we are always in touch with our souls.

However - your spirit cannot be accessed in any natural way.

*That which is born of the **flesh is flesh**; and that which is born of the **Spirit is spirit**. **John 3:6***

This is a profound truth and you have to take a few minutes to let it sink in.

I struggled for many years, because of my lack of knowledge and understanding of who I am. **Flesh is flesh and Spirit is spirit**. You cannot mix these two. Jesus declares that there is no direct connection between the two - between spirit and body - flesh. They are interrelated as you'll later see - but spirit is spirit and flesh is flesh. Do you want to know why God made us like this?

**Because if God did not split the spirit from the soul He couldn't redeem us from internal death and hell!! You simply can't contact your spirit through your emotions or your physical body - herein lies one of the great problems of the Christian life!** Understanding spirit, soul, and body unlocks the spirit realm.

**So you can experience who you are and what you have in Christ!**

Since we can't see or feel the spiritual realm - the only way to accurately perceive spiritual truth is through the Bible. **Simply take God's Word and believe it!**

**Remember - you have to change your mind to believe the Word of God, because everything else is a lie, coming from the devil who is the Father of all lies!**

God's Word reveals spiritual reality.

*It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life.*

**John 6:63**

If you want to know what your spirit is like - you must find out from the Word of God. You can't go by any emotion on this nor to some other type of perception - God's Word is SPIRIT and LIFE. God's Word is a Spiritual Mirror!

*For if anyone only listens to the Word without obeying it and being a doer of it, he is like a man who looks carefully at his [own] natural face in a mirror; 24 For he thoughtfully observes himself, and then goes off and promptly forgets what he was like. 25 But he who looks carefully into the faultless law, the [law] of liberty, and is faithful to it and perseveres in looking into it, being not a heedless listener who forgets but an active doer [who obeys], he shall be blessed in his doing (his life of obedience). **James 1:23 AMP***



Looking at your face in a mirror, you aren't really seeing yourself - rather you are viewing a reflection. Think about it - you have never seen your face, only a reflection of it. It's the same with your born-again spirit. God's Word perfectly reflects who you are in the spirit, it's the only way you can know. You can't just assume: "*If I had God's power inside of me - I'd be aware of it*" because that which is spirit is spirit and that which is flesh is flesh - You must look in God's mirror and trust the spiritual reality you see.

#### Every born-again believer has undergone a complete inner transformation

*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things become new. 18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;*

**2 Corinthians 5:17-18 KJV**

#### This Scripture is saying that ALL THINGS became new.

It declares old things have passed - past tense! All things have become new - present tense - reality right now! All things are of God. But your body remains the same and you are still as ignorant as before your born-again experience. The time will come when we all will receive a glorified body but that hasn't happened yet.

*For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. 54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. 1 Corinthians 15:53*  
**KJV**

Although Christ's atonement provided for you physically, your body has not been saved yet. It has been purchased, but not redeemed yet. Jesus purchased your glorified body through His death, burial and resurrection. Although full payment has been made, you still have a corrupted body while you wait to receive your immortal, incorruptible one. At this moment, you do not yet have the redemption of the purchased possession.

*That [Spirit] is the guarantee of our inheritance [the firstfruits, the pledge and foretaste, the down payment on our heritage], in anticipation of its full redemption and our acquiring [complete] possession of it--to the praise of His glory. Ephesians 1:14 AMP*

#### Your Soul wasn't saved either!

This might sound strange to many people because they use terminology like "I'm a soul-winner" and I came to see a soul saved to describe an evangelist. In reality, the New Testament only mentions soul salvation a few times - and none of them in context of the born-again experience (Heb 10:39; James 1:21, 5:20; 1 Pet 1:9)

**Soul salvation happens when an emotionally discouraged and mentally defeated Christian starts believing God's word and then experiences victory, peace, and joy again**

When it comes to being born again - your soul wasn't the part of you that completely changed! If you were stupid before you were saved - you're still stupid after being saved. If you were depressed before you got saved, you'll stay depressed until you change the way your soul thinks by believing God's Word.

**Your soul can be transformed now to the degree you renew your mind,  
change your attitudes and conform your values to the word of God**

This does not happen automatically. In your soul, old things didn't pass away - and all things haven't yet been made new. The transformation of your soul won't be completed until you are with Jesus! When you receive your glorified body - you'll also receive your glorified soul!

*For we know in part, and we prophesy in part. 10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away. 11 When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things. 12 For now, we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known. **1 Corinthians 13:9-12 KJV***

When that which is perfect comes - your glorified body - your current partial knowledge will give way to full revelation! That's the coming future fulfilment of transformation and complete change in your body and soul. But 2 Corinthians 5:17 clearly states that any person who is in Christ is already a brand-new creature.

*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away. **2 Corinthians 5:17 KJV***

Old things have passed away - all things have become new - this total transformation isn't just in process; it's describing a change that's already been done - an accomplished fact!

**Where did this complete change occur? According to God's mirror,  
not in your body and not in your soul  
BUT  
in your BORN-AGAIN SPIRIT**

Because of our sinful nature (*as we all are born in sin, the reason for a born again experience to enter the Kingdom of Heaven*) and continued sin in our lives and because of minor and major **traumas** in our lives, our **souls are broken**. People constantly experience disappointments in life, are in conflict with one another and in many cases with themselves. As explained, even when you are born again, baptized in water and in the Holy Spirit, Christians are still depressed and still walking in fear. We attend church every Sunday and try to walk as born-again Christians, but we are still in prison and captivity.

#### **Why is this - and how can we break free?**

Well, today is your day. I have very good news for you, because I have experienced it myself and are helping many other people to break free from this captivity!

## **Understanding The Soul**

I strongly believe by not having a clear understanding of what was previously discussed is the main reason why the Body of Christ is in prison and in captivity. It is because of a lack of knowledge that we are in bondage.

Therefore my people are gone into **captivity**, because they have **no knowledge**: and their honourable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst. **Isaiah 5:13**

My people are **destroyed** for **lack of knowledge**: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children. **Hosea 4:6**

Knowing how the spirit, soul and body works and functions with a clear understanding of who we are in Christ after we have been born again, is the pathway to your freedom. So, let's look what is happening in our soulish realm and how we can heal our broken souls after our born-again experience.

#### HOW DOES IT WORK?

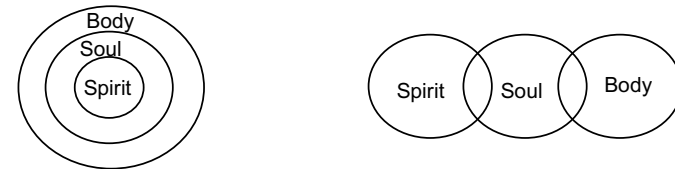
How is it possible that evil spirits can have access to the human spirit? They access our thoughts through our brainwaves!

- There are four types of brainwaves: alpha, beta, theta and delta.
- Delta waves are the dream state and will not be discussed here.
- These brainwaves operate in the realm of your physiological brain.
- Each of these brainwaves are necessary for our comprehension in thought.
- These 3 brainwaves facilitate images, thought and how we process it as a living being.

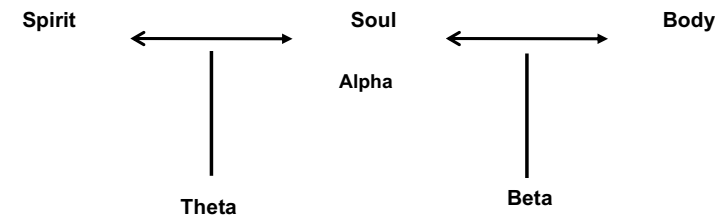
This gives us our deductive reasoning, our personality and the compositeness of our existence. **The real YOU are your spirit**: When God created man He first created the body and the soul but there was no life in it. Life only came when God BREATHED into man and His spirit became alive (**the body without**

**the spirit is dead - James 2:26**). As we said, our soul consists of the MIND, EMOTION & WILL. Reality is not just the physical realm we live in but also includes the spiritual realm.

This is a physical illustration of the spirit-soul-body. Our SOUL is the bridge between the spirit world and the physical world.



You comprehend what I am saying through two of your five physical senses - sight & hearing.



As you are listening, your "**Beta**" brainwaves are being activated. They allow your brain to pick up **images of sight** and **sound through an electrochemical** process. You are actually taking **snapshots** and **pictures** - it is **short-term memory**. Your brain records the experience from the physical world - **This process programs your SOUL!**

Your SOUL involves;

- Your **intellect**,
- Your **mind**,
- Your **emotions**
- The recording of your good and bad experiences in life; and your will, to make decisions!

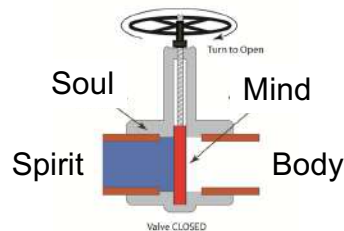
Your soul functions in the physical realm. When we see and or experience tragedy in life and it breaks your heart - it all happens in the physical realm. Our bodies are also trapped in the physical world. BUT our Soul can move forward and backward - therefore can also function in the spiritual realm / world (as it is the bridge between the spirit and physical world).

Our **mind** is a **Valve** that shuts down what is supposed to flow from the spiritual mind / realm to our souls. Inside of us - in our spirit - we always have the fullness of God as a Born-Again Christian. We must BELIEVE it to open up

our soul for what is true in the spiritual realm. For without FAITH it is impossible to please God - *(But without faith, it is impossible to please him: for him that cometh to God must believe that he is and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him Hebrews 11:6).*

Everything that is true in the spiritual

realm - we BELIEVE it - and the more we hear / focus and meditate on it the more our minds are renewed and we become a new person!

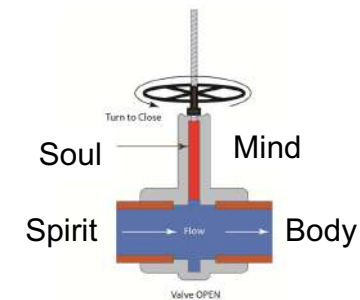


The unrenewable mind shuts down everything that is in the spiritual mind. Therefore, scripture is telling us that we must first renew our minds (*Your hearts and minds must be made completely new, Eph 4:23 ASV*). This can only take place when we wash our mind with the water by the Word of God.

*That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, Ephesians 5:26 KJV*

Only then, after the Word of God has renewed your mind, can the valve be

opened and new information flows out of the spirit to the soul and the mind. Instead of your old mind being in charge, always telling your spirit what to do and what to believe, suddenly your spirit is in charge and tells your mind to submit. From now on, the order has been restored. My spirit, soul



and body is walking by faith and not by sight anymore. I am not moved by what I am seeing, hearing, feeling, smelling and tasting, but by what the Word of God is telling me!

## PROCESS OF PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

As we think about things over and over again, protein synthesis occurs. It involves RNA and DNA, but specifically RNA. Our thoughts that are recalled over and over again actually becomes permanently part of our biology.

**God** wants to train you so that His **law is not just in your spirit**, but so that His law is part of your **personality** as a human being. The enemy wants to train us

too and he uses the same pathway - Theta Waves. This is the law of sin as part of your personality - Opposed to the law of GOD.

There is a battle because both laws are in your members according to Scripture. Even as Christians, we have the law of sin in our members.

- For example - do you ever experience strife in your family? Is the distance between your brain and your tongue ever zero? Are the words that come out of your mouth words of life or death?

The law of sin is reinforced by a being (*sin by its fallen nature*) or because your mind has not been renewed. Everything you perceive externally is recorded in your long-term memory, which becomes part of your biology.

- Many Christians serve sin - that does not mean they are possessed - It means they are under the influence of the law of sin and they follow it as if it were truth

*But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. Romans 7:23 KJV*

## RENEWED MIND

Now it makes much more sense as to why scripture says to renew your mind!

*And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God. Romans 12:2 KJV*

By now it must be clear to you that we are a spiritual being, with a soul living in a body. We are born in sin out of a corruptible seed! Sorry to shock you, but

**before we are born-again (baptized in water and with the Holy Spirit) - we all were under the control of the prince of the air which works in us - the sons of disobedience!**

*In which at one time you walked [habitually]. You were following the course and fashion of this world [were under the sway of the tendency of this present age], following the prince of the power of the air. [You were obedient to and under the control of] the [demon] spirit that still constantly works in the sons of disobedience [the careless, the rebellious, and the unbelieving, who go against the purposes of God]. Ephesians 2:2 AMPC*

**These are hard words, but it is the truth.**

If it was not so, why did God tell us that which is born of the flesh is flesh and which is born of the Spirit is spirit?

*That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. John 3:6 KJV*

That is precisely the reason why we need to be born again - not of **corruptible seed** (the flesh) but of **incorruptible seed** - the Word of God. Reborn from above, spiritually transformed through the everlasting Word of God.

*Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever. 1 Peter 1:23 KJV*

*For you have a new life. It was not passed on to you from your parents, for the life they gave you will fade away. This new one*

will last forever, for it comes from Christ, God's ever-living  
Message to men. **1 Peter 1:23 TLB**

for you have been **born again** [that is, **reborn from above—  
spiritually transformed, renewed, and set apart for His purpose]**  
**not of seed which is perishable** but [from that which is]  
**imperishable and immortal**, that is, through the living and  
everlasting word of God. **1 Peter 1:23 AMP**

It is the only way we can enter the Kingdom of Heaven. We need to be born-again, but it does not stop there. We need water baptism (*that the old man can die*) and Holy Spirit baptism (*to receive God's resurrection power - dunamis power*) to have power to rule and to take authority given to us by Jesus Christ to overcome difficulties and the enemy. This is what Jesus told Nicodemus - asking him how it was that he was a teacher himself but did not know these things?

Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee,  
**Except a man be born again**, he cannot see the kingdom of  
God. **John 3:3**

Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a **man be  
born of water and of the Spirit**, he cannot enter into the kingdom  
of God. **John 3:5**

That which is **born of the flesh is flesh**; and that which is **born of  
the Spirit is spirit**. **John 3:6**

After our born-again experience, which is only to confess and believe (*For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is*

made unto salvation **Rom 10:10**) we enter the Kingdom of Heaven. When you confess with your mouth and believe in your heart that God is Lord, the Messiah the Anointed One - Christ we came out of darkness into the light and we yield and submit to God.

To open their eyes, and **to turn them from darkness to light**, and  
**from the power of Satan unto God**, that they may receive  
**forgiveness of sins**, and inheritance among them which are  
**sanctified by faith** that is in me. **Acts 26:18 KJV**

Then Christ is in you, perfectly made and you are a new creature (some translations says a new species).

I in them, and thou in me, that they may be **made perfect in one**;  
and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast  
loved them, as thou hast loved me. **John 17:23 KJV**

**This is profound folks, we are perfectly made, new creature, all old things  
passed away and ALL things are new and what is even more profound is that  
you now have the MIND OF CHRIST**

Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a **new creature**: old things  
are passed away; behold, **all things are become new**.  
**2 Corinthians 5:17**

For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct  
him? **But we have the mind of Christ**. **1 Corinthians 2:16**

All these things happened in our spirit which we can't see or feel, we only believed it. It is by faith and not by touch or sight. I have asked God in the past

to give me more faith so that I can do more or believe more. **Even more good news - you have the exact same measure of faith as Christ!**

**I told you to keep on your seatbelts - yes this is what the Word of God is telling us.**

Paul is saying that we have the "**the measure of faith**" which means each and every one of us has the same measure of faith which equals the measure of faith Christ had when He walked on the earth.

*For I say, through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think; but to think soberly, **according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith. Romans 12:3***

**You are even "SEALED" by the Holy Spirit after you heard the word of truth and made it to salvation. Your spirit will never change again - you are perfectly made in Christ. I really hope you are understanding this because it will change your life forever when you know that you are a spiritual being, born again out of incorruptible seed, the Word of God, having the measure of faith and vacuumed back to eternity.**

*In whom ye also trusted, after that, ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, **Ephesians 1:13***

**So what's left? We now need to renew our minds - our mind is part of our soul.**

*And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the **renewing of your mind**, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God. **Romans 12:2***

One day when Jesus comes back and raises the dead, we will receive our glorious body. Then we will also receive our new souls, our mind which will know all!

*In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. 53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. 54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. 55 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? 56 The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. **1 Corinthians 15:52-56 KJV***

#### **HOW DOES YOUR MIND BECOME RENEWED?**

Your mind is renewed or cleansed by the washing of the **water of the WORD!**

This means you begin to **meditate on the Word of God day and night** -

Studying thoughts and comparing them to how God thinks.

- The Word of God teaches us how to think
- This thinking now confronts the bad thinking
- If you have fear / anxiety / stress disorders this is the process of getting free!
- This is the beginning to transform us into functioning spiritual people in how we think, speak and act!

## It Is A Journey Of SANCTIFICATION

### Theta Brainwaves

Theta Brainwaves are the pathways of impressions, thoughts and pictures allowing your brain to be connected to your spirit man. Theta brainwaves are about four and a half beats per second. If we yield our minds to the enemy we are activating the pathway between the soul and the spirit allowing evil spirits access to the human soul through thoughts. If we didn't have theta brainwaves, we would never have a conscience that would speak to you. You would never hear the **voice of the Holy Spirit bearing witness to the truth**, you would never be convicted of anything and you could never be tempted by the devil and his kingdom. An evil spirit can speak to your spirit, you perceive its thoughts at the soul level through theta brainwave activity. Your spirit knows everything your soul does and your soul knows everything your spirit does because of theta.

**Many people don't realize that temptation can come in the form of EMOTIONS & FEELINGS.** Satan would not necessarily come to us with instructions to go and murder or to commit adultery. BUT he will come to us **through his kingdom** with aspects of **human failure**, to try to get us to become a **personality of human failure**.

Satan said to Adam & Eve to eat the apple and that it would only make them wise! The moment they sinned, they were taught the knowledge of sin - the Law of Sin. They started knowing evil and it was never God's intention - He only wants us to know GOOD!

- We only can know what we are taught - throughout our lives, we were taught from external and internal sources - this involves a tremendous amount of discernment to help you hold every thought captive!

The only way Satan's kingdom could have access to Adam & Eve was if they give him permission. Adam & Eve gave that kingdom permission when they disobeyed God's command. When they ate the apple, their spiritual eyes opened. Spiritual understanding came and they knew good and evil. They saw they were naked, and were ashamed of their nakedness. When God came down, GUILT and FEAR entered them.

God answered: "**WHO TOLD YOU THAT YOU WERE NAKED?**"

**The same today - Who told you?** - Who told you you have depression? Who told you you have cancer?

### Trained

We have been trained over 6 000 years to think just the opposite of how God thinks - We have been taught to be victims, to make victims, to be afraid, to be rejected, to be bitter, to have inappropriate feelings and then when you go to a psychologist, he blames you anyway!

**"SO - Who told you to be afraid, to be bitter and to be depressed?"**

You are not the problem - we have been trained in the law of sin! Are your thoughts your own? **God wants to remove the things that are not of Him - this will begin to renew our minds!** And so we will have the mind of Christ and to have ways of thinking that are superior to the law of sin. God wants to teach you - the Holy Spirit wants to bear witness of truth.



In this regards - **1 John 2** is an amazing Chapter to read and study - it changed my life when I heard these truths that God wants to teach you - Paul is saying (TLB)

*"<sup>12</sup>I am writing these things to all of you, my little children because your **sins have been forgiven in the name of Jesus our Savior.** <sup>13</sup>I am saying these things to you older men because you really know Christ, the one who has been alive from the beginning. And you young men, I am talking to you because **you have won your battle with Satan.** And I am writing to you younger boys and girls because you, too, have learned to know God our Father.*

*15 Stop loving this evil world and all that it offers you, for when you love these things you show that you do not really love God; 16 for all these worldly things, these evil desires—the craze for sex, the ambition to buy everything that appeals to you, and the pride that comes from wealth and importance—these are not from God. They are from this evil world itself. 17 And this world is fading away, and this evil, forbidden things will go with it, but whoever keeps doing the will of God will live forever.*

*18 Dear children, this world's last hour has come. You have heard about the Antichrist who is coming—the one who is against Christ—and already many such persons have appeared. This makes us all the more certain that the end of the world is near.*

*20 But you are not like that, for the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you know the truth. 21 So I am not writing to you as to those who need to know the truth, but I warn you as those who can discern the difference between true and false.*

*24 So keep on believing what you have been taught from the beginning. If you do, you will always be in close fellowship with both God the Father and his Son. 25 And he himself has promised us this: eternal life.*

*27 But you have received the Holy Spirit, and he lives within you, in your hearts, so that you don't need anyone to teach you what is right. For he teaches you all things, and he is the Truth, and no liar; and so, just as he has said, you must live in Christ, never to depart from him.*

These are very important and sharp words from Paul. First, he mentioned and referred to those who won the battle against Satan. **The battle is in our mind!**

Then he warns us - stop loving this world (*come out of the world*) - it brings evil desires, a craze for sex, ambitions to buy everything you see and the pride of wealth of this world. The KJV 1Jn 2:16 referred to it as "**the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life**" and that is not of the Father, but is of the world. Then Paul makes a very interesting and important statement that we are in the last hour of this world (*I heard a testimony of someone who heard God's voice saying that we are currently in the last minute of the last hour of the last days*) - so please hear these truths today and be delivered!

God teaches us and those who learn the truth from Him will be attracted to Him.

*As it is written in the Scriptures, 'They shall all be **taught of God.**'*

*Those the Father speaks to, **who learn the truth from him**, will be **attracted to me.** John 6:45 TLB*

But, says Paul, the Holy Spirit comes upon you and you will believe what you have been taught and will have close fellowship with God. Those that have received the Holy Spirit does not need anybody to teach them anything - God Almighty will teach them. Therefore, my friend, let yourself be washed clean by the Word of God. As you read Scriptures - alpha waves give you the ability to have cognitive, deductive reasoning. The alpha waves record all the things that you've perceived externally and internally, integrated to produce deductive reasoning. This becomes the compositeness of the identification of your personality and your soul.

### Wholeness

God wants us to be sanctified - wholly - not only in some parts. Wholeness in our spirit, soul, and body!

*And the very **God of peace sanctify you wholly**; and I pray God your whole **spirit and soul and body** be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. 1 Thessalonians 5:23*

80% of all disease originates in the spirit realm. It is the WRONG WAY OF THINKING that triggers the body to respond to disease!

**In fact - all your enemy has to do to produce over a 100 major syndromes and diseases is to control the activity of your hypothalamus, through the mind-body connection**

### The Enemy

Let's look at how the enemy works: The enemy can't touch you - just as he could not touch Adam & Eve until they said yes to the thought process of Satan.

- First - the enemy (*demonic forces*) keeps your thoughts captive and makes his spirituality part of your spirituality.
- So, let's say a spirit of **FEAR** begins to speak to you.
- A spirit of fear knows it cannot put a disease on you unless you are disobedient to God's Word.
- When the spirit of fear enters - you become **disobedient to the Word of God** as Scripture tells us:

*For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind. 2 Timothy 1:7*

It will speak to you spirit-to-spirit out of the spirit world because it is a spirit. It needs your permission to co-operate - how does it get your permission? The first thing it is going to do is begin to give you thoughts. This is a temptation! The Word of God says we need to cast down imaginations, and bring all and every thought into captivity.

*Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ; 2 Corinthians 10:5 KJV*

That is why we need to hold every thought captive to obedience to God. These are your feelings, apprehensions, emotions, trepidations and uneasiness. You are being tempted to believe that it is real! It wants to train you in the law of sin so it can put a disease on your body. You are taught that when you have these feelings, that they are negative emotions - a psychological defect. When you give this spirit of fear permission it can give you "**High Blood Pressure**" which comes out of **DISOBEDIENCE to God's Word**. Medical science says hypertension is a stress related disorder.

### THE DOCTOR

The doctor just puts you on medication, he doesn't discuss the fact that you have a stress disorder! He is not concerned about the pathway of your thoughts that produced the disease! Neither has the medication sanctified you! Are your feelings and thoughts GOOD or EVIL? You might say it's just human nature and human nature is not evil. Something has joined human nature and made it less than what God had intended. If we can remove what is not of God, we have human nature that has been sanctified to produce wholeness. Then your mind is renewed by the washing of the water of the Word.

### FEELINGS

You have become one with something as if it were you. A spirit of fear can teach you to be so afraid through the spirit, soul (mind) and body connection, that your body can shake! Your body can even go into anaphylactic or catatonic states, get rashes, hives, hyperventilate, heart palpitations, start to

sweat and you are convinced all this is real. It is only real because you bought the law of sin as a way of thinking

### HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE

Giving you feelings of worry, pictures of things that can go wrong in the future, get you to worry about the economy, worry about the mother-in-law who wants to come live with you, worry about finances and the 6 o'clock news is certainly going to stir you up. As a result, the enemy has trained you in your long-term memory to make worry a part of your personality. BUT the **Bible says not to take thought of tomorrow!** So, all the worry is just to get you violate this one Scripture.

*Take therefore no thought for the morrow: for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof. Matthew 6:34 KJV*

After a period of time, that thought, through protein synthesis, will become a permanent part of your biology. Now, not only are you being tempted - you have the law of sin working as part of your existence. **As you become one with worry, the mind-body connection, through the limbic system puts things in motion.** The hypothalamus integrates a pathway to produce all kinds of neurological misfiring.

- The central nervous system, endocrine system, and homeostasis are affected until finally, you're like a scarecrow flapping in the wind of a hurricane.
- All of this is because you think that is just who you are and physiological manifestations are occurring to prove it.
- An imbalance of the sympathetic nervous system occurs.

- This causes the cell membrane of the cardiovascular system to narrow.
- The **opening is not large enough to accommodate the volume of blood.**
- That increases blood pressure.
- So, you take a drug that is a beta blocker - that opens up the blood vessels and it appears you are out of danger.
- But you still worry - **You still fear and you are not sanctified** - and still, you are not a doer of the Word!

You are actually being maintained by the same kingdom who gave you the disease. Paul is calling pharmakeia - witchcraft (Gal 5) - a work of the flesh because it offers itself as a healing. It is not - it is disease management. Disease management means you are not healed. You might be out of danger but you are not healed. God does not want you to be managed, He wants you to be free of disease. We can prevent and defeat high blood pressure if you understand how this kingdom speaks to you. **Self-accusation and guilt are going to hammer you** - then you are going to go into denial because you don't want to face your battleground. Out of sight out of mind is not a spiritual principle! Denial exposes you to the enemy - We must discern the source of our thoughts!

Scripture is very clear - we can yield to the **Law of God or to the Law of Sin**

- You served the law of sin with the flesh - your mind.
- Why? - Because your soul is weak, it has been weakened by the enemy over time.
- This is where the enemy attacks you.
- And that is why you need to renew your mind - heal your soul to get out of captivity.

## CHOICE

You have a choice to make. You have held the law of GOD in one hand and the law of SIN in the other. When someone comes against you, you have a choice to make - ***you are either going to repay evil with evil or repay evil with good!***  
(Proverbs 15:1 - "A soft answer turns away wrath")

- The law of God says to forgive them - don't pay attention when wrong is done to you - it's hard, isn't it? WHY?
- Because you have been trained by the law of sin screaming in your head, tempting you to repay evil with evil.
- When you feel like being bitter, hateful toward yourself, bitter at others or when you have rejection, fear, unloveliness, envy and jealousy, that is a temptation!
- If it has become part of your personality, then you are serving SIN!
- You need to recognize it, repent to God for serving it and be delivered!
- Then you can have your mind renewed.

Otherwise, you are stuck with it and the torment that comes with it. GOD is not going to sovereignly overtake you - you are going to have to work with God in your journey.

- Can you hold up unforgiveness in the one hand and forgiveness in the other hand and CAN you choose to FORGIVE!
- Not because you feel like it - but because it is God's will!
- Forgiveness is superior to unforgiveness - Love is superior to hate - being a peacemaker is superior to begin a troublemaker
- Having mercy is superior to showing no mercy - Having patience is superior to showing impatience

## THE ENEMY IN OPERATION

### LET ME TELL YOU A STORY WHICH I EXPERIENCED FIRST HAND

I was ministering to a lady in her early 70's, helping her with arthritis, osteoarthritis and with rheumatoid arthritis (yes, she suffered from all three diseases). It was an amazing experience to see that after 15 hours of ministering scriptures to her over two days, t she stood up and walked upright without any pain. After a few weeks, we baptized her (*taking into account her background, to baptize a 70-year-old very conservative Dutch Reformed church member, is a miracle itself*) and she asked me to pray for her bladder. When she told me that she could not sleep at night because of the high frequency of urinating, I immediately responded that we first have to make sure what is happening before we just started praying over it.

So, I started to follow the pathways and roots, all under the leading and inspiration of the Holy Spirit. Subsequently I asked her a few questions:

- "Do you have any **heart** problems"? - **NO, she said.**
- "Do you take any medication for **high blood pressure**" I asked? **NO, she answered.**

Her daughter, standing in the kitchen heard our conversation and reminded her mother that she does indeed take medication for high blood pressure.

- I asked her if she has **high water retention in her lower feet.**
- **"Yes, she said** - just look how swollen my feet are."
- Then she also then told me that the doctors had given her a pill to stop urinating during the night..

**Thank you, Lord, – you are always right! Let me tell you what the problem was**

The Lord showed me the following with regards to a high frequency urinary problem. It is connected to a heart failure root problem and is called **congestive heart failure.**

Congestive heart failure (CHF) is a chronic progressive condition that affects the pumping power of your heart muscles. While often referred to simply as "**heart failure,**" CHF specifically refers to the stage in which fluid builds up around the heart and causes it to pump inefficiently. You have four heart chambers. The upper half of your heart has two atria, and the lower half of your heart has two ventricles. The ventricles pump blood to your body's organs and tissues, and the atria receive blood from your body as it circulates back from the rest of your body. CHF develops when your ventricles can't pump blood in sufficient volume to the body. Eventually, blood and other fluids can back up inside your lungs, abdomen, liver, lower body.

Basically, you get a left-sided and a right-sided CHF. Left-sided CHF is the most common type of CHF. It occurs when your left ventricle doesn't properly pump blood out to your body. As the condition progresses, fluid can build up in your lungs, which makes breathing difficult. Right-sided CHF occurs when the right ventricle has difficulty pumping blood to your lungs. Blood backs up in your blood vessels, which causes fluid retention in your lower extremities, abdomen, and other vital organs.

So, as explained earlier, the spirit of **FEAR** - when you give permission to it you can get "**High Blood Pressure**". That's why I asked the question if she was on any medication for high blood pressure. High blood pressure

puts extra strain on your heart and blood vessels because the cell membrane of the cardiovascular system narrows. The opening is not large enough to accommodate the volume of blood and that increases blood pressure. Taking high blood pressure medication only opens up the blood vessels and it appears you are out of danger. **But you still worry - You still fear and you are not sanctified - and still, you are not a doer of the Word!**

Fluid retention in the lower extremities builds up during day time and when you go to bed, all the excessive fluid excreted through the bladder - hence the reason for the high urinary demands during night time.

***Wow - an eye opener for me too!***

This is how subtle the enemy works. I am not against any doctor - but spiritually rooted disease, sickness, bondage and captivity does not lie in the field of the medical profession. In addition, the financial reward they receive for practising is astronomical - all of this a strategy of the enemy.

#### **BEWARE OF THE CHALDEANS**

*"Yes - she confirmed - when I am on the road traveling to my children I am very anxious and feel stressed and when I reach my destination, my feet are swollen".*

**Now we can pray - we caught the thief.** We spoke to the mountain - FEAR, in Jesus Name we rebuke you and cancel all your rights and dominion - you have to go immediately in Jesus Name. And there went excessive urinary demands during night time out of the house!

We got rid of the squatters!

**BUT IT'S YOUR CHOICE!**

**DO YOU REALLY WANT TO CHANGE?**

IF SO

**GOD WILL HELP YOU TO TRANSFORM BY THE RENEWING OF  
YOUR MIND.**

**HE WILL WORK THROUGH YOUR PATHWAYS OF THOUGHT**



## Part 4 Be Aware of your Soul Ties

Realizing, accepting and acknowledging the fact that you are in captivity, - in bondage - and understanding how we are functioning through spirit, soul, and body, **paths the way for your deliverance.**

### THIS SECTION DEALS WITH WHAT WE CALL “SOUL TIES”

Very few people know about this – and those who are aware of this – do not fully understand the implications and bondage it can have on a person. The reason why I am sharing all these aspects with the reader is because I experienced the fullness of this in my own life.

#### DREAM

*It was 4<sup>th</sup> November 2012 when the Lord appeared to my wife in a dream.*

*The next morning, she told me about her dream;*

*We were on holiday in a beautiful small town – all the houses were painted white and the roofs were blue. When I asked; “where are we, what is the name of the town, I answered, ZION”.*

When I heard the word Zion, it grabbed my attention. It took us a five-year journey to discover the fullness of the meaning of this dream and what the Lord really said to us, and what He wanted to achieve with us.

### In short, the Lord was saying to us;

**Walls:** *My promise and place of protection, safety – the New Jerusalem or salvation.*

**White:** *Symbol of holiness and purity, praise and worship, glory, victory and happiness.*

**Roof:** *My protection and oversight. This is a promise on the one hand and a responsibility on the other hand.*

For the reader, it might not sound like much, but when you realize at what point this was in our lives, you might have a better understanding of what God was saying here. It was at a low point in both of our lives – both of us just went through a divorce and my wife just lost her only son in an inexplicable car accident. According to worldly standards one could say that I was a very successful business man (*and I say it in meekness and humility*) and lost it all. My three children were living with their mother and I could see the falling away of my kids, deeper and deeper into depression. It goes even deeper, because the Lord woke me up at 3 pm on 4<sup>th</sup> April 2009 and told me to go and read Revelation!

After a while, struggling with the Lord about reading Revelation, I agreed and started reading the message to the seven churches. And again, it took me eight years to fully grasp the message the Lord gave to me that morning.

One thing the Lord showed me – unfortunately at that time I did not realize it – was that I tolerated the Jezebel spirit in my life! And that it was one of the reasons for my suffering!

*Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols. **Revelation 2:20***

With this background, you might have a better feeling for the Lords message to us:

#### **Meaning of the dream**

*"I want you to make time to get to a **place** of rest and restoration where the Holy Spirit can start with emotional and spiritual healing. The white walls symbolise My sanctification and purification with you to overcome in victory and in happiness. The blue roofs are my protection and oversight with you – this is my promise, but you also have a responsibility to repent from all your hidden sin – if you do so – then My promise is valid for you. It also points to spiritual revelations – be aware and sensitive to the Holy Spirit for divine revelations.*

#### **What an amazing journey it was under the leading of the Holy Spirit.**

So, God has revealed so many divine revelations to me that I have been sitting in my office for the past year to write it all down – freely I have received and freely I shall pass on!

Over a period of time, God dealt personally with all my hidden sins, soul ties, and DNA bondages. This was not just a once-off ritual, but rather a long period where God showed me different things. When God revealed something, I took time to meditate on it before I could fully understand the truths of it. Again, when He started to show me things I had no understanding and was not aware

of the seriousness of it. But one day, God miraculously moved in my life. It was almost four years after the dream – I believe it was on time because my heart was ready for it. God dealt intensely with me over a 30 day period. Each night the Lord downloaded information and I repented, shared it with my own household and they repented. After this, we entered into an intense spiritual warfare and God made me aware of soul ties (*I did not even know this terminology existed*).

So, I went into my study room, started praying in tongues and started writing down what the Holy Spirit revealed to me to confess. I put everything (as I did previously with everything else God showed me to repent of) on paper, and prayed in tongues for quite a while. As I prayed, people's names just appeared in my head and later on (as I already forgot some) their surnames. To tell the truth - to me that was the most intensive deliverance ever and I realized the importance of being set free from any kind of tie. I also realized that speaking of "Soul & DNA Ties" might sound technical and may be academically incorrect, nevertheless, it means something to me and I am going to share and try to explain it to the reader.

#### **SOUL TIES**

A soul tie is a linkage in the soul realm between two people. It links their souls together, which can bring forth either beneficial or negative results.

#### **THE POSITIVE EFFECT OF A SOUL TIE:**

In a godly marriage, God links the two together and the Bible tells us that they become one flesh. As a result of them becoming one flesh, it binds them together and they will cleave onto one another in a unique way. The purpose



of this cleaving is to build a very healthy, strong and close relationship between a man and a woman.

*"And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh."*

**Matthew 19:5**

When reading on the topic of soul ties, many kinds of literature referred to healthy, strong and close relationships or friendships and using King David and Jonathan's relationship as an example of a good, godly, positive soul tie.

*"And it came to pass, when he had made an end of speaking unto Saul, that the soul of Jonathan was knit with the soul of David, and Jonathan loved him as his own soul." 1 Samuel 18:1*

**KJV**

This might come as a surprise and might shock you, but this scripture only says that the soul of Jonathan was knit with the soul of David. Nowhere in scripture does it say that it was a "godly soul tie". No, my friend –**ungodly soul tie** and I will prove this in scripture for you!

I could not find a single scripture where God approved or told us that we needed to tie our souls to anything or anybody else except Him, our Father in Heaven and our spouse. The fact that the soul of Jonathan was knit to the soul of David and Jonathan acknowledging that he loved David as his own soul, does not imply this was godly. Before going into the detail, let's examine the negative effect of a soul tie.

### THE NEGATIVE EFFECT OF A SOUL TIE:

Soul ties can also be used to the devil's advantage. Soul ties formed from sex outside of marriage causes a person to become defiled:

*"And when Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivite, prince of the country, saw her, he took her, **and lay with her**, and defiled her. And his **soul cleaved unto Dinah the daughter of Jacob**, and he loved the damsel, and spoke kindly unto the damsel." Genesis*

**34:2-3**

This is why it is so common for a person to still have 'feelings' towards an ex-lover that they have no right to be attracted to in that way. Even 20 years down the road, a person may still think of their first lover. Even if he or she is across the country and has their own family, all because of a soul tie!

Demonic spirits can also take advantage of ungodly soul ties, and use them to transfer spirits from one person to another.

## Ungodly Soul Ties

I want to come back to David and Jonathan. There are many, many stories and books written about these two people's relationship. Even reading on this subject, people are using this scripture confirming the soul tie between King David and Jonathan as a good thing.

*"And it came to pass when he had made an end of speaking unto Saul, that the soul of Jonathan was knit with the soul of David, and Jonathan loved him as his own soul." 1 Samuel 18:1*

But nowhere in the Bible could I find any approval from God on this – or even any text that indicates that we must have such a relationship with anybody else, that your soul should be tied to a person, animal or anything. In the Bible God said many times – **“I am your God”, “a consuming fire” - “I am a jealous God”**. This clearly indicates God does not want to share us with anybody or anything else!

*You are not to bow down to them in worship or serve them; because I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God* **Exodus 20:5 ISV**

*Indeed, the LORD your God is a consuming fire. He is a jealous God.”* **Deuteronomy 4:24 ISV**

God even commanded Satan to go away and said: “You shall worship the Lord your God and serve only HIM! – Therefore get rid of anything else – Go in Jesus Name!

*Then Jesus told him, “Go away, Satan! Because it is written, ‘You must worship the Lord your God and serve only him.’”* **Matthew 4:10 ISV**

Carefully read the following scriptures and see for yourself the one-sided, unhealthy and ungodly relationship of Jonathan with King David!

*And he said unto him, Fear not: for the hand of Saul my father shall not find thee; and thou shalt be king over Israel, and I shall be next unto thee; and that also Saul my father knoweth.* **1 Samuel 23:17 KJV**

**Did you know that Saul finds David three out of five times and Jonathan was the only person who knew where David was?**

In Psalms David is talking about Jonathan and saying:

*And if he come to see me, he speaketh falsehood; His heart gathereth iniquity to itself: When he goeth abroad, he telleth it.* **Psalms 41:6 ASV**

*Yea, mine own familiar friend, in whom I trusted, Who did eat of my bread, Hath lifted up his heel against me.* **Psalms 41:9**

*Even my close friend in whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted his heel against me.* **Psalms 41:9 ESV**

**This just confirms what the Lord whispered in my ears when I was praying in tongues during my personal soul tie-breaking confession session!**

You can never trust any person – it does not matter how good, sweet and legitimate it might look. I see too many people these days walking closer with the same sex then they walk with their spouses! This is unhealthy and you open a door to demonic forces. Before you realize it, you will be caught in a soul tie.

Never, ever make a covenant with any person, except with God and your spouse. I was always (*I will confess it if I’m wrong*) a skeptic when a person came to me with soft and charming words. Most of the time war was in their hearts! This is what scripture confirms to us in Psalms – directly out of King David’s mouth who had first hand experience in this.

*And this, my best friend, betrayed his best friends; his life betrayed his word. All my life I’ve been charmed by his speech,*

*never dreaming he'd turn on me. His words, which were music to my ears, turned to daggers in my heart. Psalm 55:20 KJV*

*He hath put forth his hands against such as be at peace with him: he hath **broken his covenant**. 21 The words of his **mouth were smoother than butter**, but war **was in his heart**: his words **were softer than oil**, yet were they drawn swords. 22 Cast thy burden upon the LORD, and he shall sustain thee: he shall never suffer the righteous to be moved. Psalm 55:20 KJV*

**In short, without going into too much detail – Jonathan operated in the spirit of Jezebel!** The spirit of Jezebel always wants to be next to the person in authority. Jonathan walked next to David, with the deepest intention of playing both sides of the fence. If Saul killed David then Jonathan would have become king. But if David killed Saul, then according to protocol (*if anybody become a king from the outside – they normally killed all the descendants of the King*), Jonathan knew he would probably die. That is why he played both sides and said:

*"Don't be afraid," he said to him, "because my father Saul will never find you. **You will be king over Israel and I will be second to you.** Even my father Saul recognizes that."*  
**1 Samuel 23:17 (TLV)**

Jonathan made a covenant (*he made three covenants with David – all one-sided*) with the house of David

*So Jonathan made a **covenant with the house of David**, saying, Let the LORD even require it at the hand of David's enemies.*

**1 Samuel 20:16 KJV**

Jonathan was aware of the political dynamic between the family of David and the family of Jonathan. In those days when one royal house replaced another, it was common for the new royal house to kill all the potential rulers from the old royal house. Jonathan knew that one-day David and his descendants would rule over Israel and he wanted a promise that David and his descendants will not kill or mistreat the descendants of Jonathan.

*And if I remain alive, please **keep your sacred promise and be loyal to me**; but if I die, 15 **show the same kind of loyalty to my family forever**. And when the LORD has completely destroyed all your enemies, 16 may our promise to each other still be unbroken. If it is broken, the LORD will punish you." 17 Once again Jonathan made David promise to love him, for Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself. 1 Samuel 20:14 GNB*

Beware when somebody wants to make any covenant with you because of a deep friendship – on the surface – as with Jonathan – it might appear legitimate – but you cannot know a man's heart! The enemy is a master of deception and he will camouflage himself as an angel of the light

*And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. 2 Corinthians 11:14*

## Godly Soul Ties

This brings us than to Godly soul ties! I beg to differ from what most people presents as a Godly Soul Tie. I cannot prove it – but in my spirit, God revealed to me that there is scripturally only **one Godly soul tie**, but it can be split into two.

### MARRIAGE SOUL TIES

The only Godly soul tie is the **soul tie in a marriage**. God, our creator is our husband and we are married to Him and Him alone!

*For your Maker is your husband; the LORD of the Heavenly Armies is his name, and the Holy One of Israel is your Redeemer; he is called the God of the whole earth. **Isaiah 54:5 KJV***

*saith the LORD; for I am married unto you. **Jeremiah 3:14a KJV***

*"for I am your husband. **Jeremiah 3:14a ISV***

God is currently preparing the way for a new marriage – his bride must be a virgin and He will not share His wife with anything or anybody else because God is a jealous God.

*Then one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues came to me and said, "Come! I will show you **the bride**, the wife of the lamb." **Revelation 21:9***

*The **Spirit and the bride say**, "Come!" Let everyone who hears this say, "Come!" Let everyone who is thirsty come! Let anyone who wants the water of life take it as a gift! **Revelation 22:17***

*You are not to bow down to them in worship or serve them; because I, the **LORD your God, am a jealous God***

**Exodus 20:5 ISV**

*Indeed, the LORD your God is a consuming fire. **He is a jealous God.** **Deuteronomy 4:24 ISV***

According to scriptures there can only be a **soul tie** within a **legal marriage** and we are first married to God, the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit and then God also allows us to marry our spouses. If we abide in the Lord he abides in us.

*"If you abide in me and my words abide in you, you can ask for anything you want, and you will receive it. **John 15:7 ISV***

*He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, **dwelleth in me, and I in him. John 6:56***

**And when we eat his flesh and drink His blood we are in Him and He is in us!**

What an amazing prayer Paul gave to us in Ephesians – He is praying that the Holy Spirit will dwell in our innermost being and personality and settle down, abide and make His permanent home in our hearts and that we may be filled with all our being unto the fullness of God so that we can have the rich measure of the divine presence of Him and that we become a body wholly filled and flooded with God Himself!

*May He grant you out of the rich treasury of His glory to be strengthened and reinforced with mighty power in the inner man by the [Holy] Spirit [Himself indwelling your innermost being and personality]. <sup>17</sup>May Christ through your faith [actually] **dwell (settle down, abide, make His permanent home) in your hearts!***

*May you be rooted deep in love and founded securely on love,  
<sup>18</sup>That you may have the power and be strong to apprehend and  
 grasp with all the saints [God's devoted people, the experience of  
 that love] what is the breadth and length and height and depth  
 [of it]; <sup>19</sup>[That you may really come] to know [practically,  
 through experience for yourselves] the love of Christ, which far  
 surpasses mere knowledge [without experience]; that you may  
 be filled [through all your being] unto all the fullness of God [may  
 have the richest measure of the divine Presence, and become a  
 body wholly filled and flooded with God Himself]!*  
**Ephesians 3:16-19 AMPC**

Don't you think this is a Godly soul tie?

If this is what God's intention is with a soul tie – to be tied with one another that you will hear His voice inside of you, that we have the mind of Him inside of our spirit, sealed and vacuum packed with the spirit and even having the faith of Christ – do you think that this God, **your husband**, and **bridegroom** will share you with anybody else? I do not think so!

The only other marriage scripturally allowed by God is with our spouses. Therefore, the only Godly soul tie I personally believe is in marriage – first with God and then with our spouses.

*So, the Lord God caused the man to fall into a deep sleep; and while he was sleeping, he took one of the man's ribs and closed up the place with flesh. Then the Lord God made a woman from the rib he had taken out of the man, and he brought her to the*

*man. The man said, "This is now bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh; because she was taken out of man, she shall be called 'woman'. For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and cleave unto his wife, and they will become one flesh."*

**Genesis 2:21-24 KJV**

This is the famous "leave and cleaves" passage concerning marriage. From the very beginning, God's intention has been that the man and woman's soul ties with their parents should be broken prior to marriage. Why is that? Because few things are as destructive to a marriage as when one partner or another is still emotionally tied, and often, as a result, manipulated and controlled, by a meddling parent. So, interestingly enough, we see that the first Bible reference to a soul tie is an admonition to break a soul tie.

Many quote scriptures referring to it as soul ties. Soul ties with parents and children, soul ties with believers and soul ties with friends. But I think it is quoted out of context. These quotations referred to a good, godly relationship that we ought to have with all people and that we need to love one another, which of course is nothing wrong with. But as we already thoroughly discussed the soul tie between King David and Jonathan which everybody thought was a good tie and covenant between them, but proved otherwise. Likewise, a parent can't tie his or her soul to any children (*that is not the same to say but can't a parent have a good and loving relationship with the kids*), nor can anybody else tie his or her soul to anybody else – even another believer.

*"I beseech you, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all speak the same thing, that there be no divisions among you; but*

*that you be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment."* **1 Corinthians. 1:10**

*"I would that you knew what great conflict I have for you... that your hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgment of the mystery of God the Father and of Christ;"* **Colossians. 2:1-2**

In these verses, believers are encouraged to knit their lives together like threads in a garment, each thread intricately woven with each other thread. This is a picture of how God wants the body of Christ to be. **But none of this referred to a soul tie.** This is the way God laid down his ordinances for His body to operate on earth – love each other and help each other.

*"For because of Him the whole body (the church, in all its various parts), closely joined and firmly knit together by the joints and ligaments with which it is supplied, when each part [with power adapted to its need] is working properly [in all its functions], grows to full maturity, building itself up in love."* **Ephesians 4:16**

*"[For my concern is] that their hearts may be braced (comforted, cheered, and encouraged) as they are knit together..." v 19) "and not holding fast to the Head, from Whom the entire body, supplied and knit together by means of its joints and ligaments, grows with a growth that is from God."* **Colossians 2:2**

## How Soul Ties Are Formed

This is not a complete list as there might be many other ways which soul ties are formed, but here are some examples.

**Sexual relations:** Godly soul ties are formed when a couple are married (*Ephesians 5:31, "For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh."*), and the Godly soul tie between a husband and the wife that God intended him to have is unbreakable by man (Mark 10:7-9). However, when a person has ungodly sexual relations with another person, an ungodly soul tie is then formed (*1 Corinthians 6:16, "What? know ye not that he which is joined to an harlot is one body? for two, saith he, shall be one flesh."*). This soul tie fragments the soul, and is destructive. People who have many past relationships find it very difficult to 'bond' or be joined to anybody, because their soul is fragmented.

**Close relationships:** A close relationship with anybody of the same sex and/or opposite sex also forms a soul tie. Notwithstanding that so many theologies speaking of the good relationship that King David and Jonathan had, I personally believe from our teaching above that it is not God's intention for us to tie our soul with anybody else but Him and your spouse. Saying this does not mean you cannot have any good relationship with anybody, but beware of the forming of a soul tie. So how can this happen, you may ask?

My understanding is that when you start idolizing somebody or giving somebody else more attention than God Almighty and then (secondly) your wife, then you are walking a very dangerous path exposing yourself

to a soul tie. So many people have very good friends and they spend so much time together they are neglecting their relationship with God and their spouses. We unnecessarily open up a door for demonic activities to enter - as we outlaid - squatters will come in your backyard and before you know they take over the whole house.

Needless to say, that soul ties also form from bad relationships as well. Idolizing somebody can cause a bad soul tie. How many of us idolizes a celebrity, even the media asking such a questions to the public? You open your backyard for squatters to enter. I think you can create a soul tie with a music group or film star by becoming obsessed with them. Which explains the strong pull towards certain music that seems almost irresistible.

**Vows, commitments and agreements:** Vows are known to bind the soul (Numbers 30:2), marriage itself consists of vows and binds the two people together (Ephesians 5:31), therefore I have little reason to overlook the concept of vows or commitments as being a means to create a soul tie.

## Breaking Soul Ties

I like to share my testimony with you - for me it is a bit embarrassing - but for you it might be something to take note of and will hopefully help you to be set free, or maybe help others and to become aware of the dangers of a soul tie.

*I went through a divorce after being married for 17 years. At that time, and even during my time of marriage I was not aware of how the*

*enemy works nor did I have the knowledge that I have currently, knowing authority, knows how to use the resurrection power that is in me that believes, understanding who I am really in Christ through understanding the spirit, soul, and body and how the enemy is at work to keep us in bondage with sickness and poverty (to only mention a few).*

*Looking back, I realise that God tried to show me many things - I heard it - but did not understand it at that point in time. Most people (born-again, spirit filled believers and many pastors) did not or could not explain these things to me.*

*I had first-hand experience with the Jezebel spirit. Somebody gave me a book with the title "Jezebel" about 5 years before my divorce, but I never read it. One day God revealed this spirit to me and I did not know how to get out of its snare. I have always wondered and asked God as a young believer why Elijah, just after he killed 3000 Baal prophets, ran away from Jezebel into the desert asking God to take him to heaven. With this question in my mind while experiencing these attacks on me personally - God said:*

***"This is how strong the Jezebel spirit is"***

*One day I was in the field - screaming, shouting, and yelling out to God - I could not take it anymore and I wanted a way out, please! Without going into all the emotional details: "I am telling you - it is as if life is going out of you - your soul dies". Then I realized what Elijah must have felt like that day when he ran from Jezebel.*

*I remarried after my divorce and about 3 to 4 years into my second marriage, we realized that we were not free from the influence of the Jezebel spirit. Through my children (an amazing story for another day about how they came to the Lord, baptized with water and with the Holy Spirit, with a specific anointing) we became aware how my previous wife told my children what goes on in my own personal dreams (a very specific dream where she was in), knowing what went on in my finances and even told the kids she saw that I had bought a new car. She even mentioned the colour and make (she could not have seen it because we picked it up and went on holiday with the kids for 7 days).*

*I called somebody to discuss this - and during the evening while we were talking, the person explained what was going on in the spiritual realm (which I do not want to discuss here). For the first time, we became aware of ungodly "soul ties" and the impact it has on our lives. You cannot step into a second marriage before you break the soul tie with your previous spouse. This left a door open for demonic activities to influence our life.*

*The very same hour we broke these soul ties (my wife and I independently and afterwards together again). My kids (while they were visiting their mother) confirmed how her attitude changed and it was as if peace settled over the place.*

I am telling you from experience - this is real - and you have to break these forces to get free from many other bondages which we will discuss in this teaching.

#### **Another testimony:**

*I remember one young man I led through a deliverance; he was facing severe demonic visitations and torment all thanks to an ungodly soul tie. I led him to break the soul tie, and the attacks stopped completely!*

*"And the Babylonians came to her into the bed of love, and they defiled her with their whoredom, and she was polluted with them." Ezekiel 23:17*

#### **HOW TO BREAK A SOUL TIE**

Breaking soul ties begins by identifying under the leading of the Holy Spirit all persons and people (their names) in your lifetime that you were:

- Sexual active **outside of any marriage** and sexual active in any **previous marriage(s)**.
- Any **animal** or **thing** you were at any stage emotionally involved with, e.g. *"at my most vulnerable stage in life, I trained and rode horses and told people how therapeutic horses are in healing the soul of people"*. As a matter of fact, horses are used in therapy in helping people with wounded souls. In my spirit, God just revealed to me – this is wrong. Come out of this – do not tie your soul to anything else!
- Any ungodly **physical** and **emotional relationships** with any person (of the same and of the opposite sex), animal or thing except God and your legal spouse!



Repent of any sins that you were committed to cause this soul tie with them! Fornication is perhaps one of the most common ways to create nasty soul ties.

If gifts were given to you by the other person in connection with the sin or unholy relationships, such as rings, flowers, cards, bras, a watch, gold or silver jewelry or anything else. **Get rid of them!** Such things symbolize the ungodly relationship and can hold a soul tie in place. If you are still friends or in a relationship (*just now it's no longer an ungodly relationship*), like say a boyfriend/girlfriend relationship, except you've repented of and forsaken the unholy practices you used to do in your relationship, then I don't feel it is necessary to destroy all the gifts and things that you have been given. I would still encourage you to get rid of anything that symbolizes the ungodly practices in the relationship though, such as if a guy gives a girl a bra and panties with his initials on them during fornication. I wouldn't encourage you to hang on to such things that symbolize sin or that are wrong to give each other before marriage. Things such as flowers and love letters given during adultery should be destroyed. If you are married and still hold onto any gift – does not matter how small it is (*it might be a small piece of wood, just a leaf that is in your Bible received from any previous relationship*), get rid of it. While I was praying in tongues, God showed me souvenirs from school relationships that I was still in possession of – the message from God was clear – get rid of it! (***God wants you to be cleansed, holy, sanctified and whole for HIS use only – He is preparing a marriage with a virgin – we are His bride – so be a virgin for Him. He is coming soon and quickly.***)

Any rash vows or commitments made that played a part in forming the soul tie should be renounced and repented of, and broken in Jesus' name. Even things like "***I will love you forever***", or "***I could never love another man!***" needs to be renounced. They are spoken commitments that needs to be undone verbally. As *Proverbs 21:23* tells us, "*Whoso keepeth his mouth and his tongue keepeth his soul from troubles.*" The tongue has the ability to bring the soul great troubles and bondage.

***Forgive that person if you have anything against them.***

## Activating The Breaking Of A “Soul Tie”

### Voice Recording

Heavenly Father, Right Now I open a case in the Heavenly Courts and record my voice to be a full witness to put on record my confession to breaking all ungodly SOUL TIES that I am aware of and all soul ties that I am not even aware of, in Jesus Name.

### Activation

Heavenly Father, right now I access the courts of heaven (*engage imagination*) and acknowledge you Jesus Christ as my advocate, lawyer and mediator. I stand in Jesus, under the blood of Jesus Christ shed on Calvary for me. I am legislating on behalf of myself, and my generational bloodline and DNA for and I am confessing the following ungodly SOUL TIES that I am aware of:

**Ungodly Sexual Relationships outside of marriage:**


---



---

**Sexual Relationships my previous SPOUSE(s)**


---



---

**Any SOUL TIES with any other Animal attached to**


---



---

**Any ungodly physical and emotional relationships**


---



---

And I am **confessing, asking** and **accepting** FATHER GOD your FORGIVENESS for all mentioned ungodly soul ties AND I am bringing in front of your throne ALL UNGODLY SOUL TIES **THAT I AM CURRENTLY NOT EVEN AWARE** of to BREAK the YOKE of all BONDAGES in the Mighty Name of Christ Jesus.

Father God, I confess my **UNGODLY SEXUAL RELATIONSHIP** with \_\_\_\_\_, my **UNGODLY PHYSICAL AND EMOTIONAL RELATIONSHIPS** with \_\_\_\_\_ before you as sin and I

ask that you judge this sin in my bloodline/DNA and cleanse me and my generations and divorce it permanently from my bloodline. I ask, declare and decree to untangle this from my bloodline/DNA permanently. I ask for your forgiveness Lord! And I ask for a Seven-Fold Return of spiritual blessings that have been withheld from me due to this ungodly SOUL TIES in my past.

I declare and decree that I am cleansed and protected by the Blood of Jesus Christ and that everything, all my SINS, all the SINS of my ancestors back in time to Adam & Eve, and all the SINS of people that have been spoken against Me has been forgiven and PAID in FULL by Jesus Christ on the Cross when Jesus out cried – ***“It is Finished” – Tetelestai!***

I acknowledge the authority given to me by Jesus Christ and the Resurrection Power – His Dunamis Power that is in me who believes. With this authority given to me, I now release DUNAMIS POWER of my SOUL and my BLOOD and I declare and decree my DNA has been washed by the Blood of Jesus Christ and that my blood and DNA has been cleansed right now in all my generations backward and forward forever and ever.

In JESUS NAME, I break NOW the POWER, all Communication Lines of Witchcraft, adultery, *idolatry, sorcery, any spirits of insecurity, rejection, pride, arrogance, manipulation, control, rebellion, stubbornness, envy, and strife.* I break the POWERS of Jezebel over me and my generation in Jesus Name. Jezebel, I am

*speaking to you right now – I break your communication lines and witchcraft right NOW in Jesus Name! I cut it off in Jesus Name and Break it by the Blood of Christ Jesus. I declare and decree right Now in the COURTS of HEAVENS that there is NO more and any ungodly soul ties and any ungodly attachments, or any ungodly communication lines between me and anybody or anything else in the Mighty Names of Christ Jesus.*

*Praise GOD – Praise Your Name for your forgiveness Lord and your Protection of your BLOOD. Thank Jesus that we are protected by your BLOOD. Thank you, Lord, for my NEW freedom in Christ alone I am TIED – You are My SOUL TIE Lord Jesus – You are my First Love – We will only communicate with you, Jesus. **I am Free in Jesus Name!***

### Testimony

*I met a lady in her early sixties (still working and struggling to survive financially), explaining to her soul ties and I gave her my teaching I had written on it. A week later, she called my wife and testified how she broke her soul tie with her previous husband she was divorced from. The next morning, the bank called her and said that they had written off the debt of R40 000 as the insurance company agree to pay it.*

It was a miracle for her – and she walked out in freedom – it even strengthened her relationship with Abba Father.

***What a Mighty God we worship!***

## DNA TIES

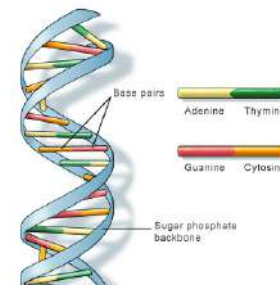
We come to the next section which I call **DNA ties**. I acknowledge that technically there might be not such a thing as a DNA tie, but as we go on explaining this concept, you might start agreeing that your DNA is more tied-up with alien alike garbage, than you might have realized or thought of.

### WHAT IS DNA?

DNA, or deoxyribonucleic acid, is the hereditary material in humans and almost all other organisms. Nearly every cell in a person's body has the same DNA. Most DNA is located in the cell nucleus (*where it is called nuclear DNA*), but a small amount of DNA can also be found in the mitochondria (*where it is called mitochondrial DNA or mtDNA*).

The information in DNA is stored as a code made up of four chemical bases: adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), and thymine (T). Human DNA consists of about 3 billion bases, and more than 99 percent of those bases are the same in all people. The order, or sequence, of these bases, determines the

information available for building and maintaining an organism, similar to the way in which letters of the alphabet appear in a certain order to form words and sentences.



Credit: U.S. National Library of Medicine

DNA bases pair up with each other, A with T and C with G, to form units called base pairs. Each base is also attached to a sugar molecule and a phosphate molecule. Together, a base, sugar, and

phosphate are called a nucleotide. Nucleotides are arranged in two long strands that form a spiral called a double helix. The structure of the double helix is somewhat like a ladder, with the base pairs forming the ladder's rungs and the sugar and phosphate molecules forming the vertical sidepieces of the ladder. An important property of DNA is that it can replicate, or make copies of itself. Each strand of DNA in the double helix can serve as a pattern for duplicating the sequence of bases. This is critical when cells divide because each new cell needs to have an exact copy of the DNA present in the old cell. DNA is a double helix formed by base pairs attached to a sugar-phosphate backbone.

In laymen's term, in every living organism there resides a DNA structure. ***The DNA defines what you are made of and what species you are connected to.*** DNA can duplicate itself and this is how families are established. The DNA of each parent can be found in the child they create together. During my searching on the topic of DNA, I found an awesome testimony of a 16-year-old child and want to acknowledge and share with you what the Lord show her, which is similar what the Lord put in my spirit regarding "DNA Ties".

#### **DNA STRUCTURE - A WORD FROM I AM TO HIS TRUE SET-APART BRIDE IN THESE END TIMES**

July 9, 2013 at 6:23am

*"... given through His beloved daughter, Sarah (16 years old) on 5th July 2013 ... Please NOTE that this Word from the mouth of Yahushua haMashiach is not specific to South Africa only, but is for His Set-apart Bride collectively."*

*(You can read the full version on the link: <http://www.tribulation-now.org/2013/07/10/you-dna-must-be-born-again/>)*

***"I am busy gathering My bride into the arc where she will be safe. It is only those who have cleansed their DNA, those who have pure blood that can enter. Sarah, tell My people to give attention to what I will tell you now, it is very important, it is a matter of purity and harlotry, salvation and deception, luke-warmness and fire... Give ear!"***

I could not put it in better words than what God Almighty has put it – in His own Words – cleanse your DNA – get rid of all your ties in your soul and in your DNA! Because the Bridegroom is on His way to save His bride – a virgin – pure and cleansed by the Blood of Jesus Christ.

The Lord showed Sarah what the seed during conception looks like – how he made the human spirit, soul, and body. ***"Yeshua started to speak to me about the DNA once again".***

*"Look inside the seed, do you see the written things? It is a code, it's a DNA code, it's far above what any human can understand. That code, My love, determines who that baby will be, that code will form its character, **personality, likes and dislikes**. It forms the **body** and it forms the **soul**, but not the **spirit**. **The spirit is born of Spirit, My Spirit. In your spirit, you inherit My DNA when you are saved, but this DNA, this seed, and inheritance is not saved yet.** Sarah, inside of that seed is blessing and curse, sin and righteousness as an inheritance from your fathers".*

In John, Jesus explained this to Nicodemus and said except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he can't enter the Kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.

*Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. 6 That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. **John 3:5 KJV***

When we are born of the flesh, we are born from a corruptible seed and in 1 Peter it confirms that being born again – not of corruptible seed, but of **incorruptible** seed – the “**Word of God**”

*Being **born again**, not of **corruptible seed**, but of **incorruptible**, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever. **1 Peter 1:23***

God is telling us that the spirit is born of Spirit – His spirit, but our flesh is born out of flesh, an incorruptible seed and is not yet been saved. This DNA, this corruptible seed must change to put on incorruption – your DNA has been tied up with the corruptible seed and needs to change. This mortal must put on immortality and the corruptible shall have put on incorruption - then when this happened – “death is swallowed up in victory” - our DNA changed and has been cleansed and we walk out in victory.

*For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. 54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. **1 Corinthians 15:53-54 KJV***

Now, this makes even more sense: “*inside of that seed is blessing and curse, sin and righteousness, as an inheritance from your fathers*”. This is the reason and motivation for you to clean up your DNA.

When we are in Christ, we become a new creature – looking at this word in Greek it also means “**creature**”. When you become a new creature, your DNA had to change – this is what DNA coding is all about – it indicates from what species you are!

*Therefore if any man be in Christ, **he is a new creature**: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.*

**2 Corinthians 5:17**

**G2937**

ktisis

ktis'-is

From G2936; original *formation* (properly the act; by implication the thing, literally or figuratively): - building, **creation**, **creature**, ordinance.

**Sarah Continues..**

*“This DNA is very, very important. Inside of the DNA code, there are supposed to be key essentials so that your body and soul can function the way I purposed them to. These seeds in the DNA are love proteins, and when you are born, the seed will sprout if it is exposed to the right elements. The mother and father are to nurture, comfort, affirm, accept and love this gift from Me and the result will be gender identity and spiritual identity, a healthy and whole soul and body. But now the babies are being exposed to **trauma** – even at birth – with the way this precious child comes into this world. The children are vulnerable to whatever the parents expose them to, even in the womb, and it has a great effect on them. It is the parents work to build the child’s identity*

*through teaching them to find their identity in Me, but they are exposed to the **trauma of rejection**...*"

This is what this teaching on DNA ties is all about. It is precisely because of this trauma we experience in life (*realizing we are living in a sinful world*) that opens up the door for demonic forces to influence us.

#### **Sarah Continues..**

*"Your soul area is your mind, will, emotions, desires. The seed in your DNA grows like trees throughout your soul. For example, **if you inherited a seed of rejection**, that seed will carry the **hurts and pain of the generations** before you. That seed is in you and when you **experience any kind of trauma**, trauma at birth, as a child, or any kind of trauma, the **seed sprouts and a stronghold** forms inside your soul. A stronghold forms to suppress the pain. The **stronghold is always rooted in pride**, and fear keeps it in place. These trees are **rebellion** against Me. This tree bears **ungodly fruit** in your soul like perfectionism, judgment, fear, pride....."*

Paul lists the works of the flesh – corruptible DNA – they are all ties in your DNA that God wants to cleanse.

*Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, 20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, 21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. **Galatians 5:19 KJV***

Don't we all struggle in our lives with why God is creating imperfect and disabled babies? Is it really God doing this?

#### **Sarah Continues..**

*"This seed of rejection, for example, can affect your body in many ways, sometimes the **sickness manifests** in a later stage because of **trauma**, and other times, because of **open doors** in the mother and father. Because of **generational curses**, **spirits latch on to the DNA** and the baby can be born with a **defect**, a **disease** or **disabled**. It is part of the **curse** that came upon man at the fall. Sarah, there are many things I want to teach you about the DNA. My people have a lack of knowledge!"*

God's Word is clear on this: "If we obey Him, He will make us a great nation on earth and all these blessings will be ours" (*read the blessing from Deuteronomy 28:2-14*).

*"If you obey the LORD your God and faithfully keep all his commands that I am giving you today, he will make you greater than any other nation on earth. 2 Obey the LORD your God and all these blessings will be yours: **Deuteronomy 28:1***

But God's Word is also clear that "If we do not obey Him, we will come under a "curse" and many evil things will come upon you" (*read the evil things Deuteronomy 28:16-68*).

*"But if you disobey the LORD your God and do not faithfully keep all his commands and laws that I am giving you today, all these evil things will happen to you: **Deuteronomy 28:15***

When mankind continues disobeying God's Word, incurable disease and epidemics will come upon you - even disease and epidemics that are not mentioned in this book. Looking currently at the medical profession you will notice that the handbook for disease and epidemics are more than 6 000 pages – it becomes a book thicker than the Bible. Speaking to doctors, they will tell you how many diseases today are incurable.

*he will send on you and on your **descendants incurable diseases** and **cohorrible epidemics** that can never be stopped. 60 He will bring on you once again all the dreadful diseases you experienced in Egypt, and you will never recover. 61 He will also send all kinds of **diseases and epidemics** that are not **mentioned in this book of God's laws and teachings, and you will be destroyed. Deuteronomy 28:59***

We became a nation living in disobedience to the Word of God! Your DNA has been tied up!

*"I also want to teach you about the DNA structure: It is an order. There are 2 orders – **the one comes out of hell and the other out of Who I AM!** Out of Hell comes the order of **Baal** and man plays the harlot with it, and I will call My order the **order of I AM!** This is the **structure of your DNA**".*

Make-up your mind who you want to worship – if it is the Lord our God – worship Him then, and Him alone and allow Him to come and break all the ungodly ties in your DNA. But if Baal is your god, worship him then with ungodly ties in your DNA.

*Elijah went up to the people and said, "**How much longer will it take you to make up your minds? If the LORD is God, worship him; but if Baal is God, worship him!**" But the people didn't say a word. **1 Kings 18:21***

**Sarah Continues..**

*"Inside the order of **Baal is the structure**, the nature and the **seed of lucifer. The curse is a result of it, most sicknesses are a result of it, spiritual death is a result of it, poverty is a result of it and destruction is a result of it. I have spoken to you a lot about the pure bride and about what it means to be the **pure bride**. The pure bride has **My DNA**, she has My structure, **My order, My nature and My seed in her. The blessing is a result of it, life is a result of it, prosperity is a result of it, holiness and righteousness are a result of it**".***

In contrast with the fruits of the flesh in Galatians 5:19, these fruits of a pure bride which has the DNA of the great "I am" is:

*But the Spirit produces **love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, Galatians 5:22***

The time has come for the wedding of the Lamb and the bride has prepared herself for this wedding. Are you prepared?

*Let us rejoice and be glad; let us praise his greatness! For the **time has come for the wedding of the Lamb, and his bride has prepared herself for it. Revelation 19:7***

Are you ready to meet your husband – are you cleansed and a virgin?

*And I saw the Holy City, the new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared and ready, like a **bride dressed to meet her husband. Revelation 21:2***

When the sign is given in heaven to show the bride to the Bridegroom, the wife of the Lamb – will you be identified as the “**bride**” – the bride of the “**I AM**” or will your DNA indicate that you are of another “species” – and that you are the bride of “**Harlot**” with the DNA structure of Baal?

*One of the seven angels who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues came to me and said, "Come, and I will show you the Bride, the wife of the Lamb." **Revelation 21:9***

Or maybe you are of those still enjoying the lifestyle of Babylon?

*On her forehead was written a name that has a secret meaning: "Great Babylon, the mother of all prostitutes and perverts in the world." **Revelation 17:5***

**Sarah Continues..**

***"My bride has I AM flowing through her veins while the harlot bride – that has not cleansed her DNA – has hell operating through her ... mixed seed. My people are playing harlot because they have the order and the structure of Baal in them – that is why they are double-minded, that is why they are still sick. Even though by My stripes you were healed, they have remained still sinful, unholy and unrighteous, but they call themselves Christians. I tell you the word Christian is reserved for those who are lukewarm. You are either My bride, holy, pure and righteous, building your spirit house upon the Rock of Ages, living in My Kingdom, or you are a 'Christian', lukewarm, so-called***

***saved but deceived, so-called good but led astray without even knowing it. This 'Christian' is part of the harlot, she is, in fact, worse than the sinner because she is the same as the sinner in heart, but she thinks she is good".***

God is saying because of your mixed seed, because of your ties in your DNA, because your DNA still has the structure of Baal and “I AM”, you are **double minded**. The Word of God calls us to cleanse us as sinners, purify our hearts and to get out of being double minded – cut off the DNA tie of Baal and become single-minded on “ME”

*Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. **Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded.***

**James 4:8 KJV**

When you are double minded you will always be unstable in your ways and that is why you are neither cold nor hot, but lukewarm – and if you are lukewarm and double minded “**I will spue you out of my mouth**”

*A double minded man is unstable in all his ways. **James 1:8***

*So then because of thou art lukewarm, and **neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth.** 17 Because thou sayest, **I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing;** and knowest not that thou art wretched, and **miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked: Revelation 3:1***

The call is clear – break all the soul ties and break your DNA tie with Baal! How may you ask?



## Sarah Continues..

*"My people, if you want to go into the ark like Noah, you have to cleanse your DNA through **applying My blood** through **repentance**, through **petitioning in My heavenly courtroom**. Remember, your spirit can be holy and righteous and you can think you are on the right road because of it. **But** if you do not take the next step through **cleansing your DNA** and working on your **soul dimension**, **you are divided within yourself – in your spirit, on fire, and in your soul, cold**, and therefore you are mixed, **mixed and lukewarm**. My bride is not mixed, she is single-minded and in unity with Me, one in soul and spirit".*

Through **repentance**, recording a petition in the heavenly courtroom and applying MY Blood! This is what this whole teaching is all about. And we want to help you to be set free, and to be purified and cleansed to be ready for the Bridegroom – for this wedding that is going to take place very soon.

*"I want My people to **break down the altar**, the order and the **structure of Baal** in your blood (DNA) that your **forefathers** have cast up. Like Gideon had to break down the altar of Baal".*

*And it came to pass the same night, that the LORD said unto him, Take thy father's young bullock, even the second bullock of seven years old, and throw down the altar of Baal that thy father hath, and cut down the grove that is by it: 26 And build an altar unto the LORD thy God upon the top of this rock, in the ordered place, and take the second bullock, and offer a burnt sacrifice with the wood of the grove which thou shalt cut down. **Judges 6:25-26 KJV***

## Sarah Continues..

*"I was petitioning and repenting for my DNA and while I did that I saw the structure of the DNA and I saw 2 doors inside of my DNA (blood). There was a **black door** and a **golden door**. The **golden door** was **closed** and the **black door** was **open**. Out of the black door the DNA structure flowed, on the black door was written- 'Order of Baal/Curse' and on the golden door was written 'I AM (which is filled with the FULLNESS of ABBA's character, attributes, nature, in the name of I AM is the fullness of who He is)/Blessing.*

*There were things written on the black structure that flowed out of the black door. I recognized it as **pride** and **rebellion** against I AM (everything YHVH stands for), the nature of hasatan. So, I started to pray for I AM's light to shine in my DNA and I just started to repent and I saw the structure going back into the black door like it was being reversed. I literally saw Yeshua inside of my blood, He closed the black door (**shattered the order of Baal and curses**) and the door and the structure disappeared. **It is as if the black door was a gateway to hell.***

*Yeshua said: "Each and every human has these 2 doors in their blood; **hell operates through the black door through pride, rebellion, and curses** – it is his nature flowing out of it; while **I AM** and **blessing** flows through the way, the truth and the life. **My people, you are in a DNA war**, awaken and see that the battle you are in is a blood battle, the enemy is out to defile your blood. **Break down the order of Baal** inside of you through **repentance and petitioning**. Your DNA is who you are, it is the core of you, I want who you are to be a vein, a vessel for I AM,*

*for who I AM to flow through you and be an altar of worship, singing holy (set-apart), holy (set-apart), holy (set-apart), holy (set-apart) ...!"*

*While He said that, the golden door flung open and a white structure flowed out, with **golden and silver writings on it. I AM's character and nature** was inside of it – humility, holiness(set-apartness), love, gentleness, etc. "Sarah My love, this is the message for this hour, teach **My people how to sanctify their DNA because this is what My bride looks like.** I see what flows out of that door is His seed [love and righteousness]. If it is the black door, it is hasatan's seed [pride and rebellion]. Father's seed births purity and holiness (set-apartness) and **results in a set-apart virgin bride**, where Satan's seed births pride, harlotry, idolatry – it is mixed seed – and this makes you a harlot bride that can give birth to Nephilim babies.*

***Yeshua showed me that the written things on our DNA become what our mind meditates upon. Your mind literally records whatever is inside the DNA.** For example, when there is generational racism seed in your DNA, you have a judgmental, prideful, racist stronghold in your mind (of course you don't acknowledge it as that) because you inherit the seed from your fathers, it hides in you and when trauma occurs it explodes like a bomb in your soul. It is the same with **homosexuality**; if there is a seed of rejection, to which a spirit latches that attacks and breaks down your identity physically because there is no love inside of that seed, it can very easily manifest in one becoming homosexual. The homosexual spirit is the **stronghold** that the structure of your soul puts up to defend itself, but it comes out of a seed of rejection out of the pits of hell.*

*We are in a **spiritual battle** that manifests in the natural and the war is already won, if we would just start to apply the Blood of the Lamb, we would start to taste victory and freedom. Our weapon is the BLOOD OF THE LAMB (which carries Yeshua's DNA) because it is the fullness of I AM's LOVE poured out for our salvation, redemption, deliverance, healing, freedom...REPENT, so that you can be called righteous like Noah was righteous in all his generations!*

## Breaking DNA Ties

### Note:

*I had written a teaching on hidden sin that may help people to identify those subtle aspects in life that tied our DNA – and as we already explained, after protein synthesis took place, the long-term memory went in our DNA and that is how we are born with pride, anger and or any other malfunction and or diseases – and it is all inherited. But, the good news is that you are the generation that can now break it and come free from it. Unfortunately – the discussion of this falls outside the scope of this book.*

**To help the reader, the following are key roots behind diseases;**

- Bitterness
- Accusation
- Occultism
- Envy
- Jealousy

- Rejection
- Unloving spirits
- Addictions
- Fear

When the Lord showed me James 3:16, I stood up, made a decision: “in this house there will be no more strife and envy. Strife and envy is the root of ALL EVIL!

*For where envying and strife is, there is confusion and every evil work. James 3:16 KJV*

**Let me be frank and direct;**

**STOP WITH ALL FIGHTING RIGHT NOW!**

Stop fighting with yourself, with your spouse, with your children, with your family, friends and each and every person around you. **STOP IT RIGHT NOW!**

*If it be possible, as much as lieth in you, live peaceably with all men. Romans 12:18 KJV*

Listen to me – I am talking from experience. Even when you are walking outside with frustration and kick stones on the ground and or hitting anything with a baseball bat – stop with it. WHY?

**It does matter how we react or respond to everything in life:**

- The way we respond will determine if we draw God's blessings or
- the devil how he will come to steal, destroy and to kill.

- It is to who you will yield - that you choose who you will empower!
- When life is good - You co-operate with God.
- When your life is a mess it means you allow the devil in your life.

**Be aware - Satan himself can be transformed into an angel of light**

*And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. 2 Corinthians 11:14 KJV*

**Satan is the savour of death which leads to death and GOD is our savour of life and brings live. The choice is ours!**

*For we are unto God a sweet savour of Christ, in them that are saved, and in them that perish: To the one we are the savour of death unto death; and to the other the savour of life unto life.*

*And who is sufficient for these things? 2 Corinthians 2:15*

**It is our attitudes that brings forth a smell - a fragrance – an aroma which attracts or God or the devil!**

- When we are oppressed, the smell / fragrance / aroma of our spirit attracts the enemy - he comes to steel, destroy and to kill
- When we are walking with joy all the time that smell / fragrance / aroma of our spirit attracts GOD - the Holy Spirit

**The devil is called Beelzebub = "lord of the flies"**

- He and his hosts are attracted to decay.
- Flies found a happy breeding ground in spoiled flesh and were multiplying in unbelievable numbers.

- Issues such as bitterness, jealousy and hatred qualify as the decay of the heart that invites the devil to come and give influence!
- Fear is also a decay of the heart.
- It attracts the demonic in the same way as bitterness and hatred.
- Like flies know the scent of decaying meat, likewise Fear gives off a similar scent.

*But if ye have bitter envying and strife in your hearts, glory not, and lie not against the truth. 15 This wisdom descendeth not from above, but is earthly, sensual, devilish. 16 For where envying and strife is, there is confusion and every evil work.*

#### **James 3:14 KJV**

Satan has no power except through our agreement. Fear becomes our heart's response when we come into agreement with his intimidating suggestions. God is concerned and warns us of the **sin of unbelief** - He can give us anything, but He wonders if He shall find faith on His return?

*I tell you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth?*

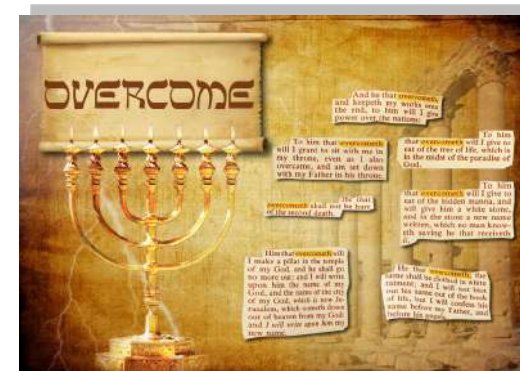
#### **Luke 18:8**

There is still so much to say about this. But let me encourage you and comfort you with these words – “**submit to God, ask Him to show you and to come and cleanse you, sanctify you and purify you and the devil shall flee from you**”

*Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. James 4:7 KJV*

Spend some time with the Lord asking the Holy Spirit to reveal to you your own ties and ties that might still be caught up in your generation. If you do not know, try to find out the cause of death of your grandparents and parents on both sides. Even a small thing like a car accident or anything else is a link to generational curses that you need to deal with a break in your life. Make a list of everything that the Holy Spirit revealed to you!

The message that God wanted to give to me on 4<sup>th</sup> April 2009 at 3:40 pm, which I only discovered eight years later, was the message He gave to His seven churches – which is for us today; “**Overcome**”



#### **My dearest friend – you must overcome!**

- The World
- The Flesh and
- The Devil



## Part 5 The Believer's Battle

### THE IMPOSSIBLE LIFE

#### Each and every believer is facing a battle on earth

The reader must understand that what I have shared so far with you was not during a time in my life as an unbeliever. No, my friend – I met the Lord very early in my life. But, I was captive in religion for many years, reading an Afrikaans Bible which came from Dutch Translations and not from any original Aramaic Hebrew or Greek version. Hebrew and Greek was only available to the pastor in the church. We all believe what the pastor said and is supposed to be the truth. But, the Lord warns us about two beasts, one rises up out of the sea and another one comes up out of the earth. These two beasts represent a religious and a political figure that will deceive and mislead the earth!

*And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy. **Revelation 13:1 KJV***

*And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon.*

**Revelation 13:11 KJV**

The cornerstone of the institutional church on earth is corrupted and the Word of God is clear that His Bride must come out of Babylon! Apart from this

spiritual war that is going on daily, there is also a battle going on in each believer's life. Early in my life I was struggling with this battle of the believer. From the day that I asked the question, until the Lord reveal the full truth to me spanned about 30 years. Freely I received and freely I will share this with you! Today, the original Aramaic Hebrew and Greek text is freely available to all of us at the click of a mouse button – and what a totally new world has opened up for those who are truly seeking the truth?

#### My own true desires

Throughout my life, I have had many questions that few people could answer. As I grew up, studied, searched, asked and cried out to the Lord, over time He revealed many truths and the Lord answered all my questions I had. He even gave me more revelations about what I didn't even ask for or looked for. What a wonderful and faithful God we are serving. (*Don't trust in man, in whom there is no help for your there – **Psalms 146:3***).

Since childhood I have loved the Lord but lived a life of many frustrations. Deep inside of me, I had a desire to do right, but instead, I always ended up doing wrong. I messed up so many times in my life. Deep inside of me, I had the desire to just give love, but instead, I destroyed relationships and people around me. The more I tried to overcome my shortfalls, the worse it seemed to get. So, one of the questions I struggled with as a young believer, was what Paul talked about in Rom 7;

*"I don't understand myself at all, for I really want to do what is right, but I can't. I do what I don't want to—what I hate. <sup>16</sup>I know perfectly well that what I am doing is wrong, and my bad conscience proves that I agree with these laws I am breaking.*

<sup>17</sup> But, I can't help myself because I'm no longer doing it. It is sin inside me that is stronger than I am that makes me do these evil things" **Romans 7:15 TLB**

One weekend during a church camp at University (as a first year student) I asked a theology Professor the question of what Paul described in his life in this scripture: "For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I (**Romans 7:15**). He gave me an unsatisfying theological answer (or maybe at that time I couldn't understand is). The good news is after 30 years God revealed the truth to me, and I like to share it with you so that the truth will also set you free and you can live the life of freedom, peace, and joy in Jesus Name. Amen!

#### This is the "Believer's Battle" we all face in our lives

Please note that this battle is not the battle of the **unbeliever** – No, it is what we as born-again, water baptized, Holy Spirit filled, tongue speaking believers are struggling with daily in our walk with Christ Jesus. Not knowing where this battle is taking place further complicated our understanding and the enemy kept us in captivity: "They are darkened in their understanding and separated from the life of God because of their ignorance and hardness of heart" **Ephesians 4:18 KJV**.

Satan only wants to blind our mind from the truth to keep us from seeing the light of the good news of the Gospel and preventing us to see and to change into His image and likeness: "In their case, the god of this world has blinded the minds of those who do not believe to keep them from seeing the light of the glorious gospel of the Messiah, who is the image of God" **(2 Corinthians 4:4 KJV)**.

It fascinates me these days when you share "deliverance" of God's people in the Body of Christ, which so many members and pastors responded that you are talking about the people outside the church. Not realizing that Christ had come for deliverance for His sons and daughters, descendants of Abraham. Interesting how the Jews responded the same way when Jesus told them that if you abide in My word, you are my disciples indeed (John 8:31) and that the truth shall make you free (John 8:32), but they answered Him "**We are Abraham's descendants, and have never been in bondage to anyone**" (John 8:33). How ironic and laughable this is – the descendants of Abraham, was enslaved for 430 years, standing at that moment under the Roman Empire saying: "**we have never been in bondage**"

#### What about you?

#### IN CAPTIVITY

So far, I constantly indicated how the believer is in bondage and in captivity. The Lord is **WEeping** because His flock is carried away in captivity!

*But if ye will not hear it, my soul shall weep in secret places for your pride; and mine eye shall weep sore, and run down with tears, because the LORD'S flock is carried away **captive**.*

**Jeremiah 13:17**

Because they have no **KNOWLEDGE**.

*Therefore my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge: and their honourable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst. **Isaiah 5:13***

And also because they **REJECTED** knowledge.

*My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge. **Hosea 4:6a***

People are led away with **LUSTS** and never come to the knowledge of the truth.

*Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away. 6 For of this sort are they which creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts, 7 Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth. **2 Timothy 3:5***

The consequences hereof are that the Lord also **REJECTS** you!

*I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children. **Hosea 4:6b***

And **HELL ENLARGED herself** - opened her mouth and they descend into it!

*Therefore hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure: and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it. **Isaiah 5:14***

We are in a **BATTLE** (whether we realize it and / or like it or not). The battle is against principalities, powers, ruler of the darkness of this world.

*For we **wrestle** not against **flesh and blood**, but **against principalities**, against **powers**, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. **Ephesians 6:12***

Devil is **ROARING** like a lion seeking someone to devour.

*Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:*

**1 Peter 5:8**

The Lord commanded us to **COME OUT OF CAPTIVITY**. There comes a day (that day is today) that the Lord will send somebody with an anointing to bring the TRUTH to FREE YOU!

*The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to **proclaim liberty to the captives**, and the **opening of the prison** to them that are bound;*

**Isaiah 61:1**

BUT - You must **RESIST** the devil yourself, so you may recover yourself out of the snare of the devil.

*Submit **yourselves therefore to God**. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. **James 4:7***

*And that they may **recover themselves out of the snare of the devil**, who are taken captive by him at his will. **2 Timothy 2:26***

## The Good News

The good news is that a day is coming - when the SUN of Righteousness arise with healing in His wings and in His beams.

*For, behold, the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the LORD of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. 2 But unto you that fear my name shall the **Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall. Malachi 4:1-2 KJV***

*But unto you who revere and worshipfully fear My name shall the Sun of Righteousness arise with **healing in His wings and His beams, and you shall go forth and gambol like calves [released] from the stall and leap for joy. Malachi 4:2 AMPC***

**When the Sun of Righteousness arise with healing in His Wings & Beams, that day you will go forth and gambol like calves released from the stall and leap for joy!**

### Story

*On 25<sup>th</sup> November 2016 the Lord gave me a vision of the waters in front of me. Later on the sun was rising over the waters and the Lord led me to the “sea of glass” (Rev 4:6) and to Malachi 4 that those who fear the Lord’s name shall the Sun of Righteousness arise with healing in His wings and His beams.*

*The Lord has a desire to arise and heal you with His wings and beams. Wings refer to His “glory” and beams to His “light”. That day when you receive your healing and freedom from whatever you are in bondage to – that day you will go forth and gambol like calves released from the stall and leap for you!*

### THE PROBLEM

There is a reason that so many Christians struggle with living the Christian life. But, if we know the root of the problem and deal with it, we can live a victorious, joyful life. Somehow, we as Christians - born-again believers, baptized with the Holy Spirit, speaking in tongues - all struggle in life **because of not knowing!** Then we live the impossible Christian life on earth. *Today - this very day - is the day to cease from your struggles and come to a place of rest. (“There remains, therefore, a rest for the people of God” **Hebr 4:9 KJV.**)* Start learning to let God do what He wanted to do all this time. In a teaching of Don Krow (currently a Pastor at Charis Bible College with Andrew Wommack) he wrote:

*I have been through many struggles during my life. I've also seen many miracles. I was on a deathbed in 1976 and God raised me up. We saw our stillborn daughter restored to life. About five years ago I came to work for Andrew Wommack and I was totally destitute. I had pastored a church and there had been a split. I was totally burned out and tired of trying to live the Christian life.*

*Then the Lord began a process of renewing my mind. Through a period of several years, God has opened a picture more clearly to me. As a result, I have ceased from my struggles and come to a place*



*of rest. I have learned to let God do what He wanted to do all the time.*

And this is what Paul was talking about in Romans 7. He goes on and says it does not matter which way I turn, I can't make myself do right. He has a desire to do right, but he can't. Paul discovers that when he is doing what he doesn't want to, it is plain where the trouble is!

*I know I am rotten through and through so far as my **old sinful nature** is concerned. No matter which way I turn I can't make myself do right. I want to but I can't. 19 When I want to do good, I don't; and when I try not to do wrong, I do it anyway. 20 Now if I am doing what I don't want to, **it is plain where the trouble is:** sin still has me in its evil grasp. **Romans 7:18-20 TLB***

He goes on and distinguished between two natures in him: “as far as my “**new nature**” is concerned I love to do God's will, but there is also something else in my “**lower nature**” that is at war with my mind”.

*It seems to be a fact of life that when I want to do what is right, I inevitably do what is wrong. 22 I love to do God's will so far as my **new nature** is concerned; 23-25 but there is something else deep within me, in my **lower nature**, that is **at war** with my mind and **wins the fight** and makes me a slave to the sin that is still within me. In my mind I want to be God's willing servant, but instead I find myself still enslaved to sin. **Romans 7:21 TLB***

Paul revealed something here to us. He is talking about his “**new nature**” and a “**lower nature**” and in his lower nature that is at **WAR** with his mind! There is a battle going on – he referred to it as a “**law**” which wars against the mind!

*But I **see another law** in my members, **warring** against the law of my mind, and **bringing me into captivity** to the **law of sin** which is in my members. **Romans 7:23***

Apart from these two natures Paul refers to, he also sees another “**law**” – not with the unbelievers, but in “**my members**” (**the believers**) that are at war with his mind and **WINS** the fight! So, Paul is not just saying it is what happened with him, but in all of us – the believers – in my members. Whao!

Just look at the words in the AMPC version:

*“but I discern in my bodily members [in the sensitive appetites and **wills of the flesh**] a **different law (rule of action)** at **war against the law of my mind** (my **reason**) and making me a **prisoner** to the law of sin that dwells in my **bodily organs** [in the sensitive appetites and **wills of the flesh**]” (**Romans 7:23 AMPC**).*

**So, this law wars against the mind.**

Let's evaluate what Paul is telling us in Rom 7:23 by looking at each of the following individual aspects in more detail:

- There is a **WAR** going on – a law that wars against the mind.
- It is another **LAW** in my members – “the Law of Sin”.
- My Lower Nature – the **OLD MAN** is in opposition with,
- My **NEW NATURE**

## WARRING - THE BATTLE

Paul says this **law wars against the mind!**

*But I see another law in my members, warring <sup>G497</sup> against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. Romans 7:23*

The meaning of the word “**warring**” in the original Greek is “**to attack**”. There is principle attacking your mind!

### G497

antistrateuomai  
an-tee-strat-yoo'-om-ahee

From G473 and G4754; (figuratively) to **attack**, that is, (by implication) **destroy**: - war against.

**You're either going to win or lose in the mind.**

It schemes against you, trying to deceive and defeat you. It's warring against your mind, trying to **bring you into captivity** to what Paul calls the “**law of sin**”. For all practical purposes, we can call this “**the law the flesh**”. The “**law of sin**” as Paul puts it and the “**law of the flesh**” as we put it, is so closely related that they can hardly be separated.

In essence, Paul is saying that there is a war going on between my “**new nature**” and my “**old nature**” in my mind and when it wins (*the war in my mind*), it brings me into **captivity to the law of sin**. So, the law Paul is referring to is the “**Law of Sin**”. The “**new nature**”, Paul refers to his “**spirit**” and his lower nature, which is the old man, Paul refers to the “**flesh**”.

These are major concepts for the believers to grasp and fully understand to walk out in victory! First, you have to realize that you are CREATED with a

**spirit, soul** and a **body**. God our Creator formed us of the dust – that is our **Body**; when He breath in man’s nostrils, God breath life – that is our **Spirit**; and we became a living **Soul**.

*And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul. Genesis 2:7 KJV*

Do you want to know why God created us like this? God knew man would rebel and turn against Him and if our soul and spirit were one, God couldn’t redeem us. So, God separates the spirit from the soul and gives us another chance to choose; “*if we choose Him, His blood brought atonement for us and we are redeemed*”. Now, when we accept Jesus Christ, we can have eternal life!

God clearly stated in His word that you are not in the “**flesh**”, but you are in the **Spirit**.

*But ye are not in the **flesh**, but in the **Spirit**, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. Romans 8:9 KJV*

God is commanding us to walk in the Spirit. And there is a very good reason that God is commanding us to walk in the Spirit – that you shall not **fulfill the lust of the flesh**. For the flesh lust against the Spirit and the Spirit against the flesh.

*This I say then, **Walk in the Spirit**, and ye shall not **fulfil the lust of the flesh**. <sup>17</sup> For the **flesh lusteth against the Spirit**, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the*

*other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*

**Galatians 5:16 KJV**

LOOK AGAIN AT VERSE 17 HOW THE SPIRIT AND THE FLESH IS IN  
CONTRAST WITH ONE ANOTHER

### "THE BATTLE"

**The Believer's Battle – this is the secret of the impossible life on earth. This is where the battle is taking place. Knowing this, and understanding this will set you free to walk in victory.**

You simply can't contact your spirit through your emotions or your physical body - herein lies one of the great problems of the Christian life! If you don't understand that spiritual reality can't be felt - then you'll be confused when God's Word declares that you have the **same power** that raised Jesus from the dead (Rom 8:11) *"and if the Spirit of God, who raised up Jesus from the dead, lives in you, he will make your dying bodies live again after you die, by means of this same Holy Spirit living within you (Ephesians 1:18-20).*

If you think that the TRUTH can be discerned through your natural senses, then you'll be baffled when the Bible says that you're a brand new creature who can do the same miraculous works what Jesus did - 2 Corinthians 5:17, John 14:12. Without understanding spirit, soul & body you'll search your body and soul in bewilderment wondering - Where is it? I don't really have that kind of power in me - The Bible is so hard to understand. If you can't see, taste, hear, smell or touch what the Word reveals about you - you'll immediately be thrown into conflict. This apparent disparity between your experience and God's Word will cause you to throw up your hands in frustration and conclude.

### "It must not be true"

This is the **"Battle of the Believer"** and it takes place in our soulish and spiritual realm. When a Christian walks like an unbeliever - they get the same results – **DEATH**. Believers who don't understand and apply the knowledge of God in their lives gravitate toward carnal-mindedness. Without spiritual knowledge and understanding - your mind can't be renewed and the life of God in your spirit can't be released. That's why understanding this revelation of spirit, soul, and body is the first step toward walking in life and peace and into freedom. When a believer's understanding is darkened - they are alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them - because of the blindness of their heart!

*Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart. Ephesians 4:18 KJV*

### ANOTHER LAW

Paul tries to explain it to us. He called this sinful nature a law and asked: "Are we following a **"different law"** in our lives sometimes than the law of God?"

*If then I do that which I would not, I **consent unto the law that it is good.** Romans 7:16 KJV*

He is saying if I do **those things that are evil**, I'm telling the law or the Word that his new law that I'm following - which represents evil - is **good** and the Word of God is **evil**. When you do those evil things, you wished you would not do – you're consenting unto the law of God that this thing that he should not be doing is good and that automatically puts you under the **authority of another gospel!**

We are reading scriptures like Isaiah 5 which warn us not to call evil good and good evil and put darkness for light and light for darkness or put bitter for sweet and sweet for bitter and thought as a believer we are not doing this!

*Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter! **Isaiah 5:20 KJV***

**But this is precisely what we are doing.**

When we hate our brother - we are affirming a new gospel that overthrows the gospel of our God! The gospel of God says to forgive our brother - when instead we hold onto unforgiveness and bitterness toward our brother - we are in fact following a different law - a different gospel, a different way of thinking from that of God. So when we allow fear to rule our lives - we are affirming the gospel of FEAR. Fear destroys FAITH - which is of God. When we are allowing guilt to rule our lives - we're affirming the gospel of guilt to the destruction of forgiveness by God. We are the ones who is setting up one gospel or another!

These are tuff words, I know and it is not there to condemn you, but rather to bring the truth to set you free.

**We are either establishing the law of the kingdom of God or we are establishing the laws of Satan's kingdom!**

Sin involves the overthrowing of the government, the laws, and precepts of God. By doing so we are establishing another gospel in the earth for mankind to follow to their destruction - not to their benefit. There's not enough emphasis put on this dimension of sin in the Church today - we've become so anti-social around the issue of sin because we do not like to think that we have

sin in our lives as Christians! It is important to understand this battle, where it takes place and where this sinful nature of me still is.

## **Sin**

We are referring to sin - as the “**law of sin**” the “**flesh**”, and “**self-sufficiency**.”

## **SELF SUFFICIENCY**

The soul is the mind, will, and emotions and is selfish. Self-sufficiency is operating independently of the Spirit. Self-sufficiency is what **happened** at the **tree of knowledge of good and evil**. We tried to be God and do things in our own strength and ability. You have all the resources you need in Christ, but you can still operate just like an unbeliever. We are all capable of anything if we operate independently of this new creation that we are in Christ and begin to operate in the realm of the flesh (Galatians 5:19-21).

*And the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, 20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, 21 envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. **Galatians 5:19-21 KJV***

## Sin Warring Against Mind

Exactly how does this sin principle war against the mind? I've discovered in my life that it works something like this:

*I'm at work and I'm having a bad day. Everything that could possibly go wrong goes wrong. Then I get a thought in my mind that says, Why don't you go over there and give Jack a piece of your mind because Jack is the problem around here. If it wasn't for Jack, you wouldn't be having all these problems.*

*What are you doing with these thoughts. If it came, are you yielding to it or are you rebuking it, in Jesus name? Get out of here! That's pretty obvious that someone is telling you to go over there and give Jack a piece of your mind. When that thoughts come and say, I ought to give Jack a piece of my mind, it is first person singular pronoun... identifying with you.*

*If I go over there and give Jack a piece of my mind, you are operating on that principle of sin. Not everything that comes into my mind is me.*

That is why the Lord gave us weapons for his specific war to overcome and to win:

*“For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of **strong holds**;) 5 **Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ**”. **2 Corinthians 10:4-5 KJV***

If I had a bad thought and wasn't enlightened about this topic, I would condemn myself. I would say, If I was really a good Christian I wouldn't have had a thought like that. Good Christians don't have thoughts about giving someone a piece of their mind. It was actually the principle of sin that came via my flesh.

- The devil or a demonic spirit could be attached to it, too.
- Sometimes I don't know the difference, but that doesn't matter.
- The answer is still the same;

**I have to bring those thoughts into obedience to Christ.**

If we are not aware of this problem and how to deal with it, it results in what the Bible calls **strongholds**. You can't escape the bad thoughts of lusts; the lust of the eyes, lusts of the flesh and the pride of life (1 John 2:16).

*For the weapons of our warfare are not **carnal**, but **mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds**.*

**2 Corinthians 10:4 KJV**

Then, as a result of those strongholds, there are **demonic activities that begin to operate in the life of the believer**. (Ephesians 4:27 Neither give place to the devil.) The root problem to the struggles we face as believers (many of you may disagree with me at first) is one word – **SIN**.

The reason you may disagree is because we have only a partial understanding of this subject. To confuse it more - looking at scriptures above and like Romans 6:2 says that we are dead in sin? Romans 6:2b ..... that are dead to sin, live any longer therein?

**When you hear the word sin most of you think of something you did.**

You think of an action, like the time you got angry or gossiped; but I'm not talking about sin in that context. The word "**SIN**" in Romans Chapter 5 to 8 - is used 41 times. Forty of the times, the word sin is used as a **noun**. Only once is the word sin used as a **verb**, indicating an action or something you do.

**As a noun, the scripture is talking about a principle.**

*For all have sinned<sup>G264</sup>, and come short of the glory of God; Rom*

**3:23**

**G264**

hamartanō

*ham-ar-tan'-o*

Perhaps from G1 (as a negative particle) and the base of G3313; properly to **miss the mark** (and so not share in the prize), that is, (figuratively) to *err*, especially (morally) to *sin*: - for your faults, offend, sin, trespass.

The word sin in the Greek word is "**hamartia**" and literally, that word means a **missing of the mark**.

#### **SIN IS COMING SHORT OF THE GLORY OF GOD**

When you yield yourself under the law of sin and sin overtakes you, you are not sharing in the prize. What prize?

**In the prize of victory;**

*And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the **victory over the beast**, and over his **image**, and over his **mark**, and over the **number of his name**, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God. Revelation 15:2 KJV*

Do you remember God's message to me 2009 – "**to overcome**" – the message to the seven churches that John wrote on the Island of Patmos. You must overcome to stand before the throne and sing a marvelous song of victory with all the saints. To understand this better, let's look at Vine's Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words;

"Sin" as a noun.

So, sin can refer to an action. But Vine also says that the earliest known use is largely lost in the New Testament. He says that sin is a principle.

- It's a **source of action**.
- It's not the act itself, but **it's an inward element that produces the act**.
- Then he says that sin is a **governing principle or power**.
- **Sin is an organized power that acts through the members of the body**.
- The body is the instrument.

Vine continues and says that sin, the governing power that tries to operate through our body, is personified. He lists 16 scriptures in which sin is personified.

- **To personify something is to give it personality**.
- In the Old Testament, wisdom was personified. Wisdom wasn't a person, but wisdom cried from the streets (Prov. 1:20).

It seems if the Apostle Paul **personified the word sin** in Romans, Chapters 5-8.

- It is not saying that sin seems to almost have a personality, but
- It seems to **have a tactic**.
- It **schemes against you**. It tries to **deceive you**. It **wants to beat you**.

Evan as born-again believers we still have an **old nature** – it is the **spirit of disobedience**.

*AND YOU [He made alive], **when you were dead** (slain) by [your] trespasses and sins. In which at one **time you walked [habitually]**. You were **following the course and fashion of this world** [were under the sway of the tendency of this present age], following the prince of the power of the air. [You were obedient to and under the control of] the [demon] spirit that still constantly works in the sons of disobedience [the careless, the rebellious, and the unbelieving, who go against the purposes of God]. **Ephesians 2:1 AMP***

**It is this old spirit that was dead in trespasses and sins. This spirit is who we were outside of Christ and in Adam.** Carefully read the following scripture and do not rush it, as you might miss the revelation.

*When Adam sinned, sin entered the entire human race. His sin spread death throughout all the world, so everything began to grow old and die, for all sinned. <sup>13</sup>We know that it was Adam's sin that caused this because although, of course, people were sinning from the time of Adam until Moses, God did not in those days judge them guilty of death for breaking his laws—because*

*he had not yet given his laws to them nor told them what he wanted them to do. **Romans 5:12-13 TLB***

**This old spirit was crucified with Christ and there was a new creation.**

*Sin need never again be your master, for now you are no longer tied to the law where sin enslaves you, but you are free under God's favor and mercy. 15 Does this mean that now we can go ahead and sin and not worry about it? (For our salvation does not depend on keeping the law but on receiving God's grace!) Of course not! 16 **Don't you realize that you can choose your own master? You can choose sin (with death) or else obedience (with acquittal).** The one to whom you **offer yourself**—he will take you and be **your master**, and you will be **his slave**. 17 Thank God that though you once chose to be slaves of sin, now you have obeyed with all your heart the teaching to which God has committed you. 18 And now **you are free from your old master, sin**; and you have **become slaves to your new master, righteousness**. 19 **I speak this way, using the illustration of slaves and masters, because it is easy to understand: just as you used to be slaves to all kinds of sin, so now you must let yourselves be slaves to all that is right and holy.** 20 In those days when you were slaves of sin you didn't bother much with goodness. 21 And what was the result? Evidently not good, since you are ashamed now even to think about those things you used to do, for all of them end in eternal doom. **Romans 6:14-21 TLB***

Are you getting this – it is a profound word what Paul is sharing with us. We are free from our old master – sin! We are now slaves to a new master – righteousness! Stop for a moment let these words sink in. This is your beginning of freedom when you receive this revelation in your spirit.

#### **Old things passed away and everything became new in our spirits.**

There may be times you fail. You may have all kinds of feelings, but inside you delight to do the will of God.

## **Disease**

#### **Herein lays the secret of sickness and disease.**

It is not God who makes you sick, nor can the devil make you sick. So how can you then get a disease and become sick? During this battle in the mind when you yield instead to the Law of God (*e.g. forgiveness*), you yield to the Law of Sin (*e.g. unforgiveness*) it is in this soulish realm (*the mind, emotions, and will*), in our mind what is produced disease! Our bodies are very chemical and when we, for example, yield unto the spirit of fear over a very long period, a chemical imbalance occurred. These imbalances in our bodies' leads to many hormone deficiencies and our bodies end up with a disease and sickness which lead to death. The Word of God is there to show us our hidden sin – where the battle takes place between the **old man (soul)** and the **new man (spirit)**. But few are listening to God's Word and His correction. *All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness (2 Timothy 3:16 ).*

*For the **word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the **dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.***** 13 *Neither is there **any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but **all things are naked and opened** unto the **eyes of him with whom we have to do.*****  
**Hebrews 4:12-13 KJV**

This is what the Word of God is doing – it is like a two-edged sword – it divides and split the spirit and the soul of man and discerning the thoughts and intents of the heart. More than **80% of sickness and disease are spiritually** originated and this is in the realm of the spirit where the Church must deal with the spirit of man with the Word of God. No doctor of the physio can do this and no psychologist of the psyche can do this either. To forgive my brother or my neighbour I must **first separate sin from myself** and / or the other person. I'm not one with sin - I am not sinning. I reserve the right to deal with sin - get it out of my life and remain who you are in Christ. So, I can exchange compassion for bitterness according to the knowledge of God. Now - in your own life you see that sin that dwells within and you know it yields the fruits of self-hatred, bitterness, unbelief, doubt, fear, jealousy, envy, competition, and strife. Do you know that strife is found in the same verses as murder, adultery, and fornication?

*And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient; 29 Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity;*



*whisperers, 30 Backbiters, haters of God, spiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, 31 Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful. **Romans 1:28-31 KJV***

### Sin gives Satan access to your body and soul

*Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death or of obedience unto righteousness? **Romans 6:16***

Satan wants to bring death into your life any way he can.

- Sickness, disease, poverty, shame, depression, discouragement and all sorts of other nasty things.
- Why give your enemy an opportunity to come against you?
- But as a Christian, we do not have to live holy in order for God to accept and be pleased with you.
- Our actions and attitudes do determine how you get along with other people.
- That's why it's still to your advantage to live a holy life.

*Now then it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me. 18 For I know that in me (**that is, in my flesh,**) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not. **Romans 7:17 AMPC***

Look at verse 18 - Paul is making it very clearly **in me** - that is in my **FLESH**. The body without the spirit is dead - if not born again there is absolutely nothing

good in you. John 6:63 the spirit quicken the flesh profit nothing. This is the struggle that we all have - believers and unbelievers - in the physical body!

*For as the **body without the spirit is dead**, so faith without works is dead also. **James 2:26 KJV***

*Confess your faults one to another, and **pray** one for another, that ye **may be healed**. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much. **James 5:16 KJV***

We must separate ourselves from the sin that dwells within us and that dwells within our neighbour. When you look at your neighbour you are going to have to be able to separate them from their sin - to bring any kind of sanity into your Christian walk before God. What happens when you see sin in your neighbour is that you make him the same as his sin. He does not sin and if he's a believer - he's the redeemed of God. He may have sinned - but he is not sinning. He is the one whom God saw from the foundation of the world. He's the one whom the Spirit of God lives within - he's the one who's being redeemed. He's the one whom God loves - but he's got some sin tagging along that needs to go. The sin needs to go; it's interfering with his sonship - interfering with his sanctification - interfering with his position before God and that is the area we need to deal with.

Discernment unto freedom requires **separation** - seeing sin for what it is. What I am about to teach you right here is the foundation for your freedom - that's **discernment** and **separation**. You must be able to separate yourself from the sin that dwells within you. Romans 7 show us that we needed to separate myself and my heart from the sin within - that is the day that sanctification began in my life. Then we on our way to FREEDOM!

It is not what enters a man that can defile him, but the things which come out of him. We are hung by our tongues – you can only speak life or death (Prov 18:21). Nothing in-between.

*There is nothing from without a man, that entering into him can defile him; but the things which come out of him, those are they that defile the man. Mark 7:15 KJV*

*And he said, That which cometh out of the man, that defileth the man. 21 For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders, 22 Thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness: 23 All these evil things come from within, and defile the man. Mark 7:20 KJV*

Look at the profound words of Galatians all the works of the “**flesh**”.

*Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, 20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, 21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. Galatians 5:19-21 KJV*

#### **Why is this so - because we are not sanctified**

That is what is causing our biological, spiritual and mental diseases. This is what Paul is saying in Chapter 7 - because we can't separate ourselves from our sin we condemned ourselves every day and Sunday trying to approach God. We had an enemy - and I still had a heart for God. We must deal with

this enemy and he had to go. The day that you learned to **separate yourself** and your **heart** from your **sin** is the day that **sanctification in your life will begin!**

*Now then it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me. 18 For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not. Romans 7:17 KJV*

And God wants to sanctify you in your spirit, soul, and body:

*And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. 1 Thessalonians 5:23 KJV*

#### **OLD MAN**

##### **“The Impossible Life”**

Now that we have a better understanding of the spirit, soul, body and that there is a war going on in your mind between the spirit and the soul we can analyze what the scripture is telling us about our flesh, the old man. When Paul is saying that he had learned to separate himself and his heart from his sin, he is talking about his flesh. He is not talking about the human flesh. The “**FLESH**” he referred to has to do with the “**carnal nature**”. Paul goes on to say in verse 18 – “*for I know that in me - that is, in my flesh - dwells no good thing; for to will is present with me but how to perform that which is good I find not*”.

Paul is referring to his “carnal” - his man in the “flesh”, also known as “the old man”. In the Greek, the word flesh means carnal minded, a human nature / being with its frailties, physically or morally passions. The Greek word is “sarx”.

#### G4561

sarx

**flesh** (as *stripped* of the skin), that is, (strictly) the *meat* of an animal (as food), or (by extension) the **body** (as opposed to the **soul** (or spirit), or as the symbol of what is external, or as the means of kindred, or (by implication) **human nature** (with its frailties (physically or morally) and passions), or (specifically) a *human being* (as such): - **carnal** (-ly, + -ly minded), flesh ([ -ly]).

As a man thinks he will become: “For as he thinketh in his heart, so is he” (**Proverbs 23:7a**). “This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh” **Galatians 5:16**. It is our daily thoughts; the lust of the eye, the lust of the flesh and the pride of life that determines who you become.

That is what's happening: We struggle in the flesh - but still have a good heart for God. We are looking in the mirror - the perfect law of liberty - and when we turn away - we see the sin.

*For the good that I would I do not: but the evil which I would not, that I do. 20 Now if I do that I would not, it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me. Romans 7:19 KJV*

Paul is talking here about his **carnal nature** - that **unrenewed part** of him that didn't match the nature of God within him. He came to the realization that it was not him - for he knew his heart before God was to do good; so, he

concluded that it was something else that was within him that was doing it - that is - the sin; yet the conclusion of this is that it was sin that dwelt within, causing an action through Paul that became sin to him. More than once Paul was concluded that in his life as a Christian and apostle was not him doing it - He determined it was evil / sin that was dwelling in him - doing it through him. This is the same with us - we have a heart for the Lord - the harder we try the more hinder we get. The beginning of understanding is to be able to **separate you from the sin** that dwells within that is acting out its nature through you - thus the full meaning of Hebrews 4:12-13.

*For whatever God says to us is full of living power: it is sharper than the sharpest dagger, cutting swift and deep into our innermost thoughts and desires with all their parts, exposing us for what we really are. <sup>13</sup> He knows about everyone, everywhere. Everything about us is bare and wide open to the all-seeing eyes of our living God; nothing can be hidden from him to whom we must explain all that we have done. Hebrews 4:12-13 TLB*

What an amazing scripture. God already knows everything and it is His desire to reveal our entire shortcoming to us – not to condemn us, but to heal and to sanctify us. This is where healing of disease begins!

**This sin that dwells within Paul identified in Hebrews 4:13 as the creatures that need to be made opened and naked before Him with whom we have to do.**

*I find then a law, that, when I would do good, evil is present with me. 22 For I delight in the law of God after the inward man: 23 But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of*

*my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. 24 O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death? Romans 7:21 KJV*

Here Paul very clearly stated that evil was present with him and that law - sin / evil - was in his members, **warring** against the law of his mind and bringing him into captivity to the law of sin which was in his members. He was asking for deliverance - right up front and he told us the answer in verse 25

*I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin. Romans 7:25 KJV*

#### **We are all winning or losing it in the arena of the mind**

Paul discovered that sin was a law. He explained it like this;

- He tried to do good and he failed.
- He tried to do good again and he failed.
- So he tried to be holy again and he failed.
- He tried to keep the commandments and he failed.
- Then he decided that this must be a law of sin that works in his members - a law of defeat coming against him.

#### **What did Paul mean by a law?**

If you were to shoot someone, the police would come and arrest you and take you to jail. This is applicable all over the world - It's a universal law that if you kill someone you will be arrested and stand trial. A law is consistent. It works the same way all the time. A better example is the law of gravity. The law of gravity applies everywhere. It works the same way all the time and has its own natural power.

#### **Can you beat it?**

*"Have you lived your Christian life trying to beat the "law of sin" that seems to have its own power to hold you down? You may say, I'm not going to be defeated. I'm going to get really committed. Then the next Sunday night you have to get recommitted. So, every Sunday night you get rededicated. You may think you're not exercising your will enough. Can you live your Christian life that way? Can you say no to sin and defeat it? You can, but it's like defeating the law of gravity.*

*"I can hold an object in my hand and keep it from falling to the floor. For a time, I am defeating the law of gravity. Eventually, my hand and arm will become so tired that I can't hold it any longer. I will drop it because there is a natural power in the law of gravity pulling on my hand".*

Sin is not only doing something wrong by violating a command - it's also something right that you should have done!

*Therefore to him that knoweth to do good, and doeth it not, to him it is sin. James 4:17 KJV*

Many of us have lived our Christian life that way. We may think we'll just exercise more will power against sin. Paul says: *"For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not" (Romans 7:18). The more we try to beat sin or to exercise more power over it the less we get it right.* Paul confirms this – he is saying in Romans 7 that the things that he wishes to do - he just do not do it, but the things he does not want to do - those things he does!

*For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin. 15 For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I. Romans 7:14-15 KJV*

*We know that the Law is spiritual; but I am a creature of the flesh [carnal, unspiritual], having been sold into slavery under [the control of] sin. 15 For I do not understand my own actions [I am baffled, bewildered]. I do not practice or accomplish what I wish, but I do the very thing that I loathe [which my moral instinct condemns]. Romans 7:14-15 AMP*

Looking closely what Paul is saying; "I am **"CARNAL"** (KJV) and in the AMP he refers to **"a creature of the flesh"** (unspiritual). Notwithstanding the fact that Paul is not just any believer - he's been an apostle for at least 20 years and he's talking about his life and his challenges in living a Christian life. This does sound familiar to all of us! Paul is saying that I myself serve the law of God - but I've got a problem. I have a problem in my life - I've got sin that dwells within me. Fear is a sin - Unforgiveness is sin - strife is sin - self-hatred is sin - heresy is still sin - Lasciviousness is still sin - backbiting is still sin - Causing church split is still sin - jealousy and envy are still sin. It is not what goes into your mouth that defiles you - it's what comes from within you - out of your mouth. "There is nothing from without a man, that entering into him can defile him: but the things which come out of him, those are they that defile the man" **Mark 7:15.**

*"For from within out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornication, murders, thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness and evil eye, blasphemy, pride foolishness - all these evil things come from within and defile the man" Mark 7:20-23.*

**So, Flesh is everything that is not born-again and not under the control of the Holy Spirit, that is your OLD MAN.**

Carnal mindedness does not necessarily mean sinful mindedness (*all sin is carnal but not all carnality is sin*). CARNAL literally means - **"of the 5 senses or sensual!"** - see, smell, taste, hear and feel! It is everything in the physical realm which is in contrast with the spiritual realm. The soul consists out of the **Mind, Will, Emotions** and the **Conscious** and the Body operates in the physical realm and refers to the **"old man"**, carnal, flesh! And this is where the Battle takes place. Between the spirit and the carnal, flesh of man.

*For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Romans 8:6 KJV*

**Carnal mindedness** is allowing your mind to be dominated by what you can see, taste, hear, smell and feel. You are carnal minded when your thoughts center primarily on the physical realm. The sad news that if you are like this – carnal minded – thoughts center on the physical realm you mind wins the fight and makes you a slave of sin!

*"in my lower nature, that is at war with my mind and wins the fight and makes me a slave to the sin that is still within me. In my mind I want to be God's willing servant, but instead I find myself still enslaved to sin. Romans 7:23-24 KJV*

**BUT we walk in the spirit we shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh.**

*This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh. Galatians 5:16 KJV*

## New Nature

Let us at this point have a short and quick look at the next part of our original text:

*I love to do God's will so far as my **new nature** is concerned;*

**Romans 7:22 TLB**

Understanding your "**new nature**" will allow you to have a much better and clearer understanding of all our scriptures and to put everything into place. Let's put everything into perspective by looking at some scripture what the Bible is telling us about who we are now in Christ. When you are born-again, baptized in water and baptized in the Holy Spirit then my **old man is crucified** and your body of sin is destroyed and you will serve sin no more!

*Knowing this, that our **old man is crucified** with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. **Romans 6:6 KJV***

Now, through the **crucifixion** of Christ, I live - **Christ in me** and the life that I now live in the flesh I live by Faith.

*I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but **Christ liveth in me**: and the life which I now **live in the flesh** I live by the **faith of the Son of God**, who loved me and gave himself for me.*

**Galatians 2:20 KJV**

You are a **new creation in Jesus Christ**. Some version mentioned new "species". I always say you change from a human being to a spiritual being!

*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new. **2***

**Corinthians 5:17 KJV**

We are **one spirit** unto the Lord

*But he that is joined unto the **Lord is one spirit**. **1 Corinthians 6:17 KJV***

We are not in the flesh - but **in the spirit** - IF we do not have the spirit of Christ we do not belong to Him

*But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. **Romans 8:9 KJV***

There is a **mystery** - a revelation hidden from all ages and generations that **Christ is in YOU!**

*Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints: 27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; **which is Christ in you**, the hope of glory: **Colossians 1:26 KJV***

These are profound truths. Paul is revealing the mystery, the revelation hidden for many ages – but now we know: "**Christ is in you**".

You are a **new creature**: "*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things become new*" (**2 Corinthians 5:17**). **Perfectly made**; "*That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works*" (**2 Timothy 3:17**) and having now

the **mind of Christ**; *“For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ (1 Corinthians 2:16).* You now have **“The measure of Faith”**, which is the same faith Jesus had on earth – *“according to as God hath dealt with every man the measure of faith (Romans 12:3).* Your newborn spirit is as perfect as Christ, vacuum packed and **sealed with the Holy Spirit** and will never change again: *“In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise (Ephesians 1:13).*

This is who we are in Christ and we must walk the new life accordingly. Paul is warning the believers to lay down the **“old man”** which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts, but rather to put on now the **“new self”** – the new creation after the likeness and image of God in His true righteousness and holiness. Lay down the **old man which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts**; put on the new self, created after the likeness of God in true righteousness and holiness **(Ephesians 4:22-24).**

## Sanctification

Knowing that there is a battle going on between our **“old man”** – carnal man – the flesh and our **“new man”** – our spirit – and that because of our old way of thinking sickness and disease can enter into our bodies, we need sanctification. This is God's desire:

*And the very God of peace **sanctify you wholly**; and I pray God your whole **spirit** and **soul** and **body** be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. 1 Thessalonians 5:23 KJV*

Jesus was identifying all the wrong doing things within the **carnal man** that defile man and Paul recognized this in Romans 7. In 2 Corinthians Paul developing it as a spiritual principle of **sanctification** for the Church.

*Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us **cleanse ourselves** from all **filthiness of the flesh**<sup>G4561</sup> and **spirit**<sup>G4151</sup>, **perfecting holiness** in the fear of God. 2 Corinthians 7:1 KJV*

Again, here in Corinthians the word **“flesh”** in the original Greek refers to **“sarx”** and the word **“spirit”** refers to **“pneuma”**. **Sarx** is the flesh, body, human nature or carnal and **pneuma**, that is breath or figuratively a spirit. Jesus was talking about what is in the heart of man that needs to be dealt with - Paul also picked up the topic in 2 Corinthians, 1 Thessalonians and Romans 7 and said that it applied not just to himself but to every one of us. **I am working out my salvation daily** through grace and mercy - applying the love of the Father, the Word of God and the work of the Holy Spirit so that my heart, my soulish man - can be purged of all evil. My poor head gets the picture finally and I become one in my thoughts spiritually and psychologically so I can fulfill the Scriptures. In my spirit - I already have the mind of Christ - I need to draw it out of my spirit into my soul - that's why I need to renew my mind.

*But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord. 2 Corinthians 3:18 KJV*

This is the process of sanctification - starting to remove spiritual, biological and psychological disease of life - both generationally and personally. When we get before God and take an honest look at ourselves, when we survey our past generations and deal with the sin we find - we then come before God to let Him "work us over". Can you now see how linked all these are with our profound scripture of Hebrews 4:12?

*For whatever God says to us is full of living power: it is sharper than the sharpest dagger, cutting swift and deep into our innermost thoughts and desires with all their parts, exposing us for what we really are. <sup>13</sup> He knows about everyone, everywhere. Everything about us is bare and wide open to the all-seeing eyes of our living God; nothing can be hidden from him to whom we must explain all that we have done. Hebrews 4:12 TLB*

The Lord is saying today:

- I'm here knocking - would you open the door of your heart!
- Would you let Me come in with the Holy Spirit and cleanse you - sanctify you and remove the things that are separating Me from you?
- Could I heal you - could I deliver you- could I establish My heart for you?
- Would you enter into that degree of the covenant with Me?
- Could I be a God to you?
- Could I be a Saviour to you?
- Could I be a Healer to you?
- Could I be a Redeemer to you?
- Could I be a Husband to you?
- Would you fellowship with Me?

*As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent. 20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open. Revelation 3:19-20 KJV*

This scripture is addressing the Church of Laodicea - the believers - telling them that the Lord is not in their hearts when they think He is - but He is outside. Isn't this a tragic picture of the church today? I do not want to hear these words being said to Him - Yea Lord - and He said to me - Depart from Me - I never knew you!

*Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them. 21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven. 22 Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? 23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity. Matthew 7:20-23 KJV*

Romans 6:6 Knowing this, that our old man **is crucified** with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

**"Is" = present tense - this is where we work out our salvation daily**

*Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. Philemon 2:12 KJV*

*Therefore, my dear ones, as you have always obeyed [my suggestions], so now, not only [with the enthusiasm you would*



*show] in my presence but much more because I am absent, work out (cultivate, carry out to the goal, and fully complete) your own salvation with reverence and awe and trembling (self-distrust, with serious caution, tenderness of conscience, watchfulness against temptation, timidly shrinking from whatever might offend God and discredit the name of Christ). **Philemon 2:12***

**AMP**

Because of what Jesus did for us on the cross - according to Romans 6:6 - it is now possible that the body of sin might be destroyed today in your life.

*Your old **evil desires were nailed to the cross with him**; that part of you that loves to sin was **crushed** and fatally wounded, so that your sin-loving body is no **longer under sin's control, no longer needs to be a slave to sin.** **Romans 6:6 TLB***

This is what we call **sanctification**. God wants us to be whole again and it is His desire to sanctify us in spirit, soul, and body. Why?

So, we can be blameless when He returns to come and fetch us again as His "bride". God wants a pure and holy bride and will not defile Him with a second hand whore.

*And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. **1 Thessalonians 5:23***

In our soulish realm, we are in a car wash called sanctification. That is what Paul was trying to say. We all sin in our carnal - flesh - old man - human nature.

***Who is he that overcometh the world**, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God? 6 This is he that came by water and blood, even Jesus Christ; not by water only, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit that beareth witness because the Spirit is truth. 7 For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. 8 And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one. 9 If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God which he hath testified of his Son. 10 He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son. **1 John 5:5-10***

**KJV**

Today we see the same sins in believers today as those that can be found in the unbeliever ("For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God" **Romans 3:23**). In both cases - saved and unsaved have fallen short of the glory of God. This is exactly what Pauls said:

*What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound? **Romans 6:1 KJV***

Then Paul answers this:

*God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? **Romans 6:2 KJV***

Isn't this scripture even more clear - how is it then possible to even live in sin if you are dead to SIN? Our spirit doesn't become righteous through your good

actions and attitudes - righteousness comes through confessing Jesus Christ as your Lord and Saviour. As you are born again - God gives you this brand-new spirit. Righteousness is NOT based on your actions. Our new nature desires to live holy and we do not want to give the devil access to your soul and body through sin! If you are truly born again - God has changed your nature!

*Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? **Romans 6:3 KJV***

You are no longer a child of the devil who loves to sin. You do still sin - but it's not your nature anymore! Your spirit has been changed - and you no longer enjoy it (your sin). Every born-again believer has a built-in desire to live holy.

*And every man that hath this hope in him purifies himself, even as he is pure. **1 John 3:3 KJV***

When we preach the Law - legalism and religious works - actually strengthens sin

*The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. **1 Corinthians 15:56 KJV***

The Law makes you sin more by causing you to lust for the very thing that's forbidden. That's why God gave it - mankind was being destroyed by sin - but we deceived ourselves into thinking - I'm pretty good - God answered - Oh - you think you're ok - let me show you what the real standard is!

THE LAW made sin come alive so you'd recognize you need for a Saviour!

*For I was alive without the law once: but when the commandment came, sin revived, and I died. **Romans 7:9***

The problem here is the many believers mix the Old Testament with the New Testament and then they think God is schizophrenic - BUT HE IS NOT

*Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and forever. **Hebrews 13:8 KJV***

**Because of our positional obedience – we should not be serving sin although many do and that's not historical, that's present tense. Has the body of sin been destroyed in your life or are you still serving sin today?**

*Let not sin therefore rule as king in your mortal (short-lived, perishable) bodies, to make you yield to its cravings and be subject to its lusts and evil passions. **Romans 6:12 KJV***

Romans 6:12 is not saying that sin is not reigning in your body today - it says that you should **not let it reign** and you should not obey it.

*Do not continue offering or yielding your bodily members [and faculties] to sin as instruments (tools) of wickedness. **But offer and yield yourselves to God** as though you have been raised from the dead to [perpetual] life, and your bodily members [and faculties] to God, presenting them as implements of righteousness. **Romans 6:13 KJV***

It does not say you are not yielding your members as instruments of unrighteousness - Paul is saying you should not be - you should yield yourself to God and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God. Who is your master and what are you a servant to? **Sin unto death or obedience unto**

**righteousness.** If you decide to serve sin - then sin becomes your Lord and you become its slave.

*Sin need never again be your master, for now you are no longer tied to the law where sin enslaves you, but you are free under God's favor and mercy. 15 Does this mean that now we can go ahead and sin and not worry about it? (For our salvation does not depend on keeping the law but on receiving God's grace!) Of course not! 16 Don't you realize that you can choose your own master? You can choose sin (with death) or else obedience (with acquittal). The one to whom you offer yourself—he will take you and be your master, and you will be his slave. Romans 6:14 KJV*

Those who continue to walk after the flesh bring themselves back into condemnation and Satan has a legal right to their life until they repent!

*There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.*

**Romans 8:1 KJV**

When we are washed by the water of the Word of God we start to act correctly and the old man disappears.

*But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, 23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law. 24 And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. 25 If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit. Galatians 5:22 KJV*

It is like old icons on your iPhone or computer – after not using it for a time it asks you if it can be removed from the screen – as you are not using it

anymore. Likewise – when you are not using old pathways anymore, which were there because of the law of sin, it can also be removed because of new pathways formed (the renewing of your mind) under the Law of the Kingdom of God.

Every born-again believer has undergone a complete inner transformation.

*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new. 18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; 2 Corinthians 5:17 KJV*

This Scripture is saying that ALL THINGS become new. It declares old things have passed - past tense. All things have become new - present tense - reality right now. All things are of God. If we do not understand spirit, soul, and body - we will constantly be confused, frustrated and ultimately unbelief when we see scripture like this. After I have been born-again my body remains the same and I am still stupid as before my born again experience. The time will come when we all will receive a glorified body but that hasn't happened yet.

*For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. 54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory 1 Corinthians 15:53 KJV*

Although Christ's atonement provided for you physically, your body has not yet been saved. It's been purchased - but not yet redeemed. Jesus purchased

your glorified body through His death, burial and resurrection - although full payment has been made - you still have a corrupted body while you wait to receive your immortal, incorruptible one. At this movement, you do not yet have the redemption of the purchased possession.

*That [Spirit] is the guarantee of our inheritance [the firstfruits, the pledge and foretaste, the down payment on our heritage], in anticipation of its full redemption and our acquiring [complete] possession of it--to the praise of His glory. **Ephesians 1:14 AMP***

**Your Soul wasn't saved either** - this might sound strange to many people because they use terminology like "I'm a soul-winner" and I came to see a soul saved to describe an evangelist and evangelism.

In reality, the New Testament only mentions soul salvation a few times - and none of them - in context are talking about the born-again experience (Hebrews 10:39; James 1:21, 5:20; 1 Peter 1:9).

**Soul salvation happens when an emotionally discouraged and mentally defeated Christian starts believing God's Word and then experiences victory, peace, and joy again.**

When it comes to being born again - your soul wasn't the part of you that completely changed! If you were stupid before you were saved - you're still stupid after being saved. If you were depressed before - you got saved - you'll stay depressed until you change the way your soul thinks by believing God's Word.

**Your Soul can be transformed now to the degree you renew your mind, change your attitudes and conform your values to the Word of God**

This should happen, and it's in the process of happening but it didn't automatically happen. In your soul, old things didn't pass away - and all things haven't yet become new - the transformation of your soul won't be completed until you got to be with Jesus!

### Where the Change is Complete

**When you receive your glorified body - you'll also receive your glorified soul - 1 Corinthians 13:9-12**

*For we know in part, and we prophesy in part. 10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away. 11 When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things. 12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known. **1 Corinthians 13:9 KJV***

When that which is perfect comes - your glorified body - your current partial knowledge will give way to full revelation! That's the coming future fulfillment of transformation and complete change in your body and soul. But Scripture is clearly stated that any person who is in Christ is right now a brand-new creature.

*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new. **2 Corinthians 5:17 KJV***

Old things have passed away - all things have become new - this total transformation isn't just in process; it's describing a change that's already been done - an accomplished fact

***Where did this complete change occur? - According to God's mirror - not in your body and not in your soul BUT in your BORN - AGAIN SPIRIT***

## TWO MASTERS

It is just not possible to serve two Masters. Either you going to love the one and hate the other! This is very important to be understood with regards to certain diseases before you can be healed! You can't be healed of lupus and still hang onto self-hatred - it's just not going to happen.

*No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon. **Matthew 6:24***  
**KJV**

But we all have a **choice**. In Chapter 6 Paul is saying: “Don’t you realize that you can choose your own master? You can choose sin (with death) or else obedience (with acquittal). The one to whom you offer yourself—he will take you and be your master, and you will be his slave (**Rom 6:16 TLB**). You can choose who’s slave you want to become. You can offer yourself to the law of sin (death) or to the law of God (life). To whom you offer yourself, he will take you and be your MASTER. That is why God bring to you the choice:

*I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore*

*choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live:*

**Deuteronomy 30:19 KJV**

God call the heaven and the earth (*all and everybody as witnesses*) that He sets before you today to choose between life and death – But He also gives you the answer – Choose Me – choose Life – so I – God Almighty can become your MASTER!

## WHAT IS THE VERDICT?

## WHO WILL BE YOUR MASTER?

## Higher Law

The purpose of the Law, which God gave to Moses was to make you bow your knee and confess - "God HAVE MERCY ON ME" I can't do it on my own - I can't break this sin. The law wasn't given to help you overcome sin. *It was to show you that sin had already overcome you.* The Law strengthened sin and gave it so much power that it would effectively remove the deception that you could ever get rid of sin on your own. **Religion - however, turns it around and says - "The law was given to help you overcome sin". That's just not true.** If you are truly born-again you will have a desire to live for God

*And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure. **1 John 3:3***

There will be varying degrees of this purity manifest in your actions and thought, BUT - every born-again person seeks to purify themselves. This is clear, man cannot overcome and defeat sin. It is as we said to try to overcome

the law of gravity. It is just impossible – you can't. So, what shall we say then – to give up?

**God forbid – Our Father Heaven put into effect a different plan**

**“Another Law”**

*We aren't saved from sin's grasp by knowing the commandments of God because **we can't and don't keep them**, but **God put into effect a different plan to save us**. He sent his own Son in a human body like ours—except that ours are sinful—and destroyed sin's control over us by giving himself as a sacrifice for our sins. **Romans 8:3 TLB***

I like the way Paul is explaining this in TLB version. He says that he is speaking this way, using the illustration of slaves and masters because it is easy to understand.

---

*I speak this way, using the illustration of slaves and masters, because it is easy to understand: just as you used to be slaves to all kinds of sin, so now you must let yourselves be slaves to all that is right and holy. **20 In those days when you were slaves of sin you didn't bother much with goodness.** <sup>21</sup> And what was the **result**? Evidently not good, since you are ashamed now even to think about those things you used to do, for all of them end in eternal doom. **22 But now you are free from the power of sin and are slaves of God**, and his benefits to you include holiness and everlasting life. <sup>23</sup> For the **wages of sin is death**, but the **free gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord**. **Romans 6:18-23 TLB**.*

---

Paul is saying that there was a time that you were a slave of sin and the result was death. BUT NOW, you are free from that power of sin and are a slave of God. But now you received the free gift of God – that is ETERNAL LIFE. In essence, Paul is saying you can only overcome the law of sin and winning the battle when you replace the “**law of sin**” with a higher law – with the “**law of God**”.

**Story:**

*Dr. Myles Munroe tells a story in one of his teachings, explaining this principle by using the example of a Boeing 747. This airplane weighed 225 ton. It can't be moved on the ground, but still, you know that it can fly. How is this possible? How can 225 tons fly like a feather? This airplane of 225 tons leaves the ground because the “**Law of Gravity**” is canceled by another law: “**the Law of Lift**”. We do not destroy the Law of Gravity - but we are using the Law of Gravity to hold the airplane on the ground to reach a speed of 260 km/h and then it creates a new law and the wings are canceling the Law of Gravity and the Law of Lift takes over. Amazing!*

But even more amazing is that if the airplane stays on the ground at that high speed (if it was possible to keep it on the ground) it will destroy itself. It can't stay on the ground, it automatically creates another law – “**the Law of Aerodynamics**”. So, what is going to bring you out of your mess – “**LAWS**”. It is laws that keep you on the ground, but God also created many other laws to cancel the law of sin. Gravity does not go away, so you can't pray for the depression – but you can cancel it with another higher law! It is only impossible to cancel it if you stay under the law of gravity. Gravity makes the law of lift possible. That very same thing that is holding you down will

eventually kick in and lift you out of it. For example, “**the law of love**” will take you out of “**the law of hate**”. Are you catching this revelation?

More good news is that once that airplane is in the air it operates under the complete different law! You can look down on the earth and see that gravity does not influence you anymore BUT you got to keep the speed. If you drop the speed the plane will drop like a rock. Whatever got you there - will keep you there! Once you are at a different level - it will keep you there. Separates you with those you are associated with - some that you can't associate with anymore. It is only a law that lifts 225 ton from the ground! **This is profound my friend**. You need to meditate for a while on this and let it sink into your innermost being and personality. Similar, there is only one way to beat the “**law of sin**” that has a natural force.

#### TO PUT A HIGHER LAW INTO OPERATION

## Free vs Freed

Let me challenge your “theology” today - the **Bible never talks about overcoming sin**. The Bible teaches about being freed and delivered from sin (Romans. 6:7, 22) through a **power** that Paul calls “**another law**”.

*For he that is dead is **freed from sin**. Romans 6:7 KJV*

Don't just read too fast over this simple text. Paul is using the word “**freed**”.

“**freed**”

*simple past tense and past participle of **free***

The adjective **FREED** has 2 senses:

- *Freed from bondage*
- *Having become freed from entanglement; disengaged*
- *Familiarity information: **FREED** used as an adjective is rare.*

**Freed the slaves by legislation does not mean that all are aware of the new law and were still under bondage of the law of slavery**

1. *To make free, as from confinement or oppression: freed the slaves.*
2. *To relieve of a burden, obligation or restraint: a **people** who were at last **freed from fear**.*
3. *To remove obstructions or entanglements from; clear: free a path through the jungle.*
4. *To make available: Cancelling the program freed up money for the new library.*

*“loose, unloose, unloosen, release, liberate, release, discharge, set free, disengage, forgive, unbound, unrestricted, detached allowed, permitted, unrestricted, unimpeded, at liberty, open, clear, able, loose, unattached, unregulated, disengaged, untrammelled, unobstructed, unhampered, unengaged”*

**What it says, is that when the law of slavery changed, it “freed” the people from slavery.**

But not all of them were aware of the new legislation and were still in bondage and captive under the law of slavery. Once they became aware of the good news, they can only become **free when they walk out in that freedom**.

So **now we can obey God's laws** if we follow **after the Holy Spirit** and no longer obey the old evil nature within us. <sup>5</sup> Those who let themselves be controlled by their lower natures live only to please themselves, but those who follow after the Holy Spirit find themselves doing those things that **please God**. <sup>6</sup> Following after the Holy Spirit leads to life and peace, but following after the old nature leads to death <sup>7</sup> because the **old sinful nature within us is against God**. It never did obey God's laws and it never will. <sup>8</sup> **That's why those who are still under the control of their old sinful selves, bent on following their old evil desires, can never please God.** <sup>9</sup> **But you are not like that.** You are **controlled by your new nature** if you have the Spirit of God living in you.

**Romans 8:4 TLB**

Likewise, Jesus Christ already **"freed"** you from sin when He made that full payment on the cross when He cried out **"It is Finished"**—**"Tetelestai"**. **Are you aware of this new law?** If not — I am here today to bring the good news to you — you are no longer enslaved into slavery — **you are free**. Just as the new legislation freed the slaves, it took somebody to bring the good news to them in order for them to walk out into their freedom. You are now controlled by your new nature. Paul explains it and says: We all died with Christ (*when you accept Jesus Christ and were baptized your old man died and stayed behind in the water*), but we all rise with Christ (*when we came out of the water*) and share His new life. All your evil desire — the sinful nature — were nailed to the cross and crushed. The **"law of sin"** has now been canceled with a higher law — the **"law of God"**. This new law freed you from all its allure and its power over you.

For you have become a part of him, and so you **died with him**, so to speak, when he died; and now you share his **new life** and **shall rise as he did**. <sup>6</sup> Your old evil desires were nailed to the cross with him; **that part of you that loves to sin was crushed and fatally wounded**, so that your **sin-loving body is no longer under sin's control**, no longer needs to be a **slave to sin**; <sup>7</sup> **for when you are deadened to sin you are freed from all its allure and its power over you.** <sup>8</sup> And since your old sin-loving nature **"died" with Christ**, we know that you will share his **new life**. <sup>9</sup> Christ rose from the dead and will never die again. Death no longer has any power over him. <sup>10</sup> He died once for all to end sin's power, but now he lives forever in unbroken fellowship with God. <sup>11</sup> So look upon your **old sin nature as dead and unresponsive to sin**, and instead be **alive to God**, alert to him, through Jesus Christ our Lord. **Romans 6:6 TLB**

For the **power of the life-giving Spirit**—and this power is mine through Christ Jesus—has **freed** me from the vicious circle of sin and death (Romans 8:2 TLB). Now that you are aware of the implication of this new legislation — accept the free gift from Christ Jesus and walk out into freedom.

**Sin need never again be your master**, for now you are **no longer tied to the law where sin enslaves you**, but you are **free** under God's favor and mercy. **Romans 6:14 TLB**

But now being **made free from sin**, and become **servants to God**, ye have your **fruit unto holiness**, and the end **everlasting life**. **Romans 6:22 KJV**



Now it is your turn – walk out into your freedom – You are free from the law of sin. A higher law canceled it. **It is the law of the Kingdom of God!** With the new law, God’s new plan He puts in place for us, we overcome and crush the “law of sin” by replacing it with the power of the Holy Spirit with a higher law – the “law of the spirit”. That makes us now sons and daughter of Christ Jesus our Lord.

*For if you keep on following it you are lost and will perish, but if through the **power of the Holy Spirit you crush it and its evil deeds**, you shall live. 14 For all who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God. **Romans 8:13-14 KJV***

***This is the best news a born-again believer could hear in his life!***

***You are Freed from the law of sin***

***Walk out in freedom as a son and daughter of God Almighty.***

*Acknowledgement:*

*Don Krow: USDA Choice Flesh*

*Andrew Wommack: Spirit, Soul, Body*

*Dr. Henry Wright: A more excellent way – Be in Health*

## My Answer To The Impossible Life

I discovered for myself that the answer to this question I had asked about 30 years ago, culminates to:

### The Answer to the Impossible Life

1. *Not Guilty*
2. *Without the Spirit of God*
3. *With the Spirit of God*
4. *The End of Yourself*
5. *In Christ*
6. *Your Soul must Die*
7. *The Daily Walk*
8. *All things Add up*

### 1. Not Guilty

It changed my life the moment I realized that God never imputed the sins of this world on mankind! Whao!

*Blessed is the man to whom the Lord **will not impute sin.***

***Romans 4:8 KJV***

God only filled us with the goodness of Jesus Christ and declared to us: **“Not Guilty”!**

*And having chosen us, he called us to come to him; and when we came, he declared us **“not guilty,”** filled us with Christ’s*

*goodness, gave us right standing with himself, and promised us his glory. **Romans 8:30 TLB***

We grew up with the wrong theology and were taught that God was mad and punished the people of the Old Testament. Clearly, scripture is telling us something different:

*We know that it was Adam's sin that caused this because although, of course, **people were sinning from the time of Adam until Moses, God did not in those days judge them guilty of death for breaking his laws**—because he had not yet given his laws to them nor told them what he wanted them to do. **Romans 5:13 TLB***

No – God did not impute any sin on the human race – but instead sacrificed His Son, Christ Jesus to take upon Him all our sin – and only through Him we get our right standing before the throne and the Father.

*gave us **right standing with himself**, and promised us his glory.  
**Rom 8:30b TLB***

## 2. Without the Spirit of God

In Chapter 7 Paul is clearly talking about the FLESH (soul).

The key to understanding Romans 7 is the personal **pronoun I**.

- The **pronoun I** is used over and over.
- I want to do good. I want to keep the commandments. I want to love God.

- **However, the Spirit of God is not in that chapter.**
- **Paul is a believer, loving God and committed with all his heart, but he is operating on his own steam and burning out.**

When we yielded under the law of sin, we are walking in the flesh and we are still carnal minded. The body without the spirit is dead. Therefore without the spirit of god we are living in sin and disease is coming upon us.

Being carnally minded doesn't just tend towards death, it is death. The Amplified Bible defines death as all the miseries arising from sin, both here and hereafter. Are you depressed, beaten down, defeated? What are you thinking about? This kind of thinking and minds will lead to death. The flesh will always oppose the Spirit. Galatians 5:17 says the flesh wars against the Spirit. I have to take the Word of God and focus on the God behind the Word to draw His strength.

- I'm not rejected.
- God's Word says that I'm loved.
- I'm not beaten down.
- I'm above and not beneath.

## 3. With the Spirit of God

And then in Chapter 8 comes the victory as Paul is mentioning the spirit more than 15 times, hence referring to the spiritual man! Romans 8:1 is also a very miss quoted verse under believers as *in most other translations the second part of Romans 8:1 has been left out.*

There is therefore now **no condemnation to them** which are in Christ Jesus, who walk **not after the flesh**, but after the **Spirit**.

**Romans 8:1 KJV**

It says that there is no condemnation for us who is in Christ Jesus. But the second part (**which is missing in some other translations**) clearly says for those who are not **walking after the flesh** anymore! In other words - Paul is saying that there **is condemnation for those walking after the FLESH! No condemnation for those walking after the Spirit!** Are you getting this revelation? When we step outside his parameters we are back under the law again. We have to obey God. As a man thinks he will become: *"For as he thinketh in his heart, so is he: Eat and drink, saith he to thee; but his heart is not with thee (Proverbs 23:7 KJV).*

This is where healing manifest. Victory is inside of me. I must see who I am in Christ. Then I can change my thinking and renew my mind!

*This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh. Galatians 5:16 KJV*

*If ye love me, keep my commandments. John 14:15 KJV*

Remarkable, when Paul is coming at the second verse of this Chapter saying: **"for the law of the Spirit of Life in Christ Jesus had (past tense) made me free from the law of sin and death"**

*For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. Romans 8:2 KJV*

**He didn't say it works sometimes - it's already done!**

Paul is giving us part of the answer in verse 5.

*For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit.*

**Romans 8:5 KJV**

The next verse says,

*For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Romans 8:6 KJV*

Your mind has to cooperate with the Spirit. If your mind is not cooperating with the Spirit of God's Word, you're going to walk after the flesh. If you agree with God and set your mind on things above and not on things of this earth, there will be life and peace (Colossians. 3:1-3; Romans. 8:5).

*If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. 2 Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth. 3 For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. Colossians 3:1-3 KJV*

As Christ died, so did we and because we are dead, we are now FREED from the law of sin. But freed the slaves by legislation does not mean that all are aware of the new law and some were still under the bondage of the law of slavery. *"For he that is dead is freed from sin"* Rom 6:7. Acknowledge it, today, that the power of the law of the Spirit gives life and made you free from the law of sin. *"For the power of the life-giving Spirit—and this power is mine*

through Christ Jesus—has **freed** me from the vicious circle of sin and death”

**Romans 8:2 TLB.**

You are no longer tied to the law of sin but free under a new law – the law of the Spirit and now you are a servant of God. He is now your Master.

*Sin need never again be your master, for now you are no longer tied to the law where sin enslaves you, but you are **free** under God’s favor and mercy. **Romans 6:14 TLB***

*But now being **made free from sin**, and **become servants to God**, ye have your **fruit unto holiness**, and the end **everlasting life**. **Romans 6:22 KJV***

**What it says, is that when the law of slavery has been replaced with another law, the Law of the Spirit, it “freed” the all of us from sin.**

#### **4. The End of Yourself**

Paul discovered that it is just not possible to beat the law of sin. We all had tried to fight it, but the war in our mind is winning and that put us again-and-again under this law – the law of sin. Even the law of the Old Testament which God gave to Moses was not to overcome sin, but rather to bring them to their knees to confess - "God HAVE MERCY ON ME" I can't do it on my own - I can't break this sin. The law shows that sin had already overcome you. The Law strengthened sin and gave it so much power that it would effectively remove the deception that you could ever get rid of sin on your own.

**Similar, Paul also cried out: “O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death? (Romans 7:24).** The word “**wretched**” here

means **miserable**. Paul is saying that I am **miserable as a believer**. Have you ever felt so **miserable as a believer** that you didn't want to evangelize because you were so miserable? You didn't want to give anyone else the miserable quality of life you were living as a Christian.

But Paul was totally committed and he delights in the law of God. He wants to please God. So why is he miserable? The answer is in Romans 7:15

*“He says, For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I. The good things he wants to do, he doesn't do, and the things he doesn't want to do, he does”. **Romans 7:15 KJV***

The Bible says two seemingly different things about believers.

- It tells me that I'm an **old wretched man** and can't do anything.
- Then it says that **I can do all things through Christ**. (John 15)
- There is a balance between these two scriptures.

Before you can do all things, you have to get down to **Oh wretched man** that I am and **see that without Him I can do nothing**.

*But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead **dwelt in you**, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also **quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you**. **Romans 8:11 KJV***

After Paul said, **Oh wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me?** In the next verse, he said, **I thank God** (Romans 7:24-25). It takes Christ to live the Christian life. I can tap into the resource of Christ. People have wonderful experiences in prayer, but we've made a religion out of it. Just pray so long

each day and you'll have a wonderful experience with God. They've missed the point. The point isn't the prayer. All our answers are only in Jesus Christ (Colossians. 2:10). Prayer is not the answer. Prayer is what I use to focus my attention on Jesus, and that's when I draw His strength. Some people say the answer is praise and worship. It's not the praise and worship.

## 5. In Christ

Paul explained this in Colossians 1 that there is a **mystery** - a revelation hidden from all ages and generations that **Christ is in YOU!**

*Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints: 27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; **which is Christ in you, the hope of glory: Colossians 1:26-27 KJV***

Paul is revealing the mystery, the revelation hidden for many ages – but now we know: **“Christ is in you”**.

You are a **new creature**: *“Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things become new” (2 Corinthians 5:17)*. **Perfectly made**; *“That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works (2 Timothy 3:17)* and having now the **mind of Christ**; *“For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ (1 Corinthians 2:16)*. You now have **“The measure of Faith”**, which is the same faith Jesus had on earth – *“according to as God hath dealt with every man the measure of faith (Romans 12:3)*. Your newborn spirit is as perfect as Christ, vacuum packed and **sealed with the Holy**

**Spirit** and will never change again: *“In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise (Ephesians 1:13)*. This is who we are in Christ and we must walk the new life accordingly. Lay down the **“old man”** which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts, and put on now the **“new self”** – the new creation after the likeness and image of God in His true righteousness and holiness. Lay down the **old man which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts**; put on the new self, created after the likeness of God in true righteousness and holiness (Ephesians 4:22-24). Praise and worship are ways to direct my attention to Christ, and then I am energized (Psalm 22:3; Psalm 8:2; Matthew 21:16). Some may say the answer is in confessing the Word, but it's focusing on the God behind those words (2 Corinthians 3:15-17).

*Whatever you have to do to focus your attention on Christ, do it.*

*Just don't ever forget where your strength is. Your trust and dependence must be in Jesus Christ (Galatians 2:20 KJV)*

But Paul found another law - a principle

***I find then a law, that, when I would do good, evil is present with me. Romans 7:21 KJV***

I find then a law [or principle] that, when I would do good, evil is present with me. He didn't say, When I want to do evil, evil is lurking with me. He said, When I want to do good, evil is present with me to defeat me. He is a wretched, miserable believer. This is not the abundant life that Jesus promised. Jesus said I come that [you] might have life and that [you] might have it more abundantly (John 10:10). I don't know where we get the ideas that if you are a

good Christian, bad things don't happen to you. Paul said I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me.

*I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound: every where and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need. 13 I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me. **Philippians 4:12-13 KJV***

Paul is saying, in essence, I know what it is to be abused. I know what it is to abound. I know what it is to be hungry and I know what it is to be full. I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me - but **circumstances of life have nothing to do with one's victory**. He is saying, I can do all things through Christ which infuses strength into me. But, before you get to that point you have to know how weak you are. It's common for believers to start out depending on Christ, and end up depending on their own ability. It goes something like this:

*When you come to Jesus you throw yourself on the grace of God: You know you are a sinner and you throw yourself upon the cross and the blood that Jesus shed (Romans 5-9). Then you get into the church world. The other Christians tell you, if you really want to be a good Christian, then you have to pray an hour a day. You have to read your Bible and do all these other things. These things are good, but people misunderstand them.*

**Many people think that after ten years of religious instruction and establishing all these laws and avoiding the don'ts and doing the do's that they have arrived.** Then suddenly they do something so devastating that they can't even believe it themselves. They may come for help and say, I've been in

the ministry so many years and I can't even believe what I've done. I should have been stronger than that. True Christianity is not about becoming stronger. It's you that are becoming so weak that you never depend on your own resources (2 Corinthians 12:9). You don't depend on your own ability anymore. The good thing about you and me is Christ. Even Paul said that in our flesh dwells no good thing. We have to live the Christian life the same way Jesus Christ lived the Christian life. He came to the earth and humbled Himself. He came here from heaven and stripped Himself (Philemon 2:7-8). Jesus said I live totally dependent on the Father. What I see Him do, I do. What I hear Him speak is what I speak. Without Him I can do nothing (John 5:19, 30; 8:28, 38; 12:49-50; 14:10). Then, Jesus said, **You** have to live the Christian life that same way - in dependence upon Me (John 15:4-5; Galatians 2:20).

**You are saved by grace and you're going to have to live by grace (Colossians 2:6).**

***Romans 6:14** says that sin shall not have **dominion over you** for you are not under the law **but under grace**. Under the law, you had to rely on your own ability to achieve. But, under grace Jesus says that it's His strength, His ability, made perfect in your weakness.*

You may be good looking, or wealthy, or successful, but God says you have to come to the end of all that (Philemon 3:6-7).

*Concerning zeal, persecuting the church; touching the righteousness which is in the law, blameless. 7 But what things **were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Philemon 3:6***

## 6. Your Soul Must Die

The short of the long is that the soul must die. We need to wean our souls like David put in the Psalms:

*Instead, I have composed and quieted myself like a weaned child with its mother; I am like a weaned child. **Psalm 131:2 KJV***

The ESV version says it more direct that “I calmed and quieted my soul like a weaned child.

*But I have calmed and quieted my soul, like a weaned child with its mother; like a weaned child is my soul within me. **Psalm 131:2 ESV***

The next clue Paul gave us is that the older will serve the younger. He is talking here about a spiritual principle. When you are walking 20 or 30 years before you get saved, that means that your soul is older than your spirit. The soul there has to serve the spirit

*she was told, “The older will serve the younger. **Romans 9:12 ESV***

When Paul speaks to the people of Corinthians, he could talk to them spiritually, but instead, he had to speak to them carnally. Why? They were still babied in Christ – fed on milk. They were not even weaned.

*And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ. :2 I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able. **1 Corinthians 3:1 KJV***

What happened if you try to wean a baby? It throws a tantrum and rebels. When you still have need of milk, Paul is saying in Hebrews, you are unskilful in the word of righteousness and is still a baby.

*Of whom we have many things to say, and hard to be uttered, seeing ye are dull of hearing. 12 For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. 13 For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. 14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil. **Hebrews 5:11-14 KJV***

At this stage, you ought to be a teacher yourselves, be on strong meat – that is full age having your senses exercised to discern both good and evil. This is the daily walk of the Christian life – you need to take up **YOUR cross**.

*Then said Jesus unto his disciples, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me. 25 For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it. **Matthew 16:24 KJV***

## 7. The Daily Walk

Taking up your cross, every day and follow Jesus is what Luke is saying.

*And he said to them all, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow me. **Luke 9:23 KJV***

This cannot be your spirit (once saved always saved) and refers to your soul. Working out your own salvation daily. The soul – the flesh must die, and the older must serve the younger. You soul must submit to the spirit.

*I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily. 1 Corinthians 15:31 KJV*

It is because of our way of thinking over many years that when the time of harvest come, we can only reap what we've sown throughout our lives. When you sow adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envy, murdering, drunkenness, revellings and unforgiveness we reap sickness and disease, poverty, lack of joy, peace and we die a premature death.

#### 8. All Things Add Up!

*These things add up. Every one of us needs to pray; when all hell breaks loose and the dam bursts we'll be on high ground, untouched. Psalm 32:6 MSG*

All things in life add up. When you disobey God's Word your entire life, you reap sickness and disease in your old days (*we can see, witness and experience this daily in our lives today*). This is what the Word of God is also telling us. In Deuteronomy it's talking about blessings, using the word "**IF**" you obey the commandments of the Lord.

*A blessing, IF<sup>H834</sup> ye obey the commandments of the LORD your God, which I command you this day: Deuteronomy 11:27 KJV*

**Strong's Concordance H834: "ash-er"**

In the original Hebrew text, the word "**IF**" refers to "**asher**" and it literally means the "**blessing comes quickly**".

When we are looking at the next verse, it talks about the curse and also using the word "**IF**", but in this case, the Hebrew word using here is "**im**"

*And a curse, IF<sup>H518</sup> ye will not obey the commandments of the LORD your God, but turn aside out of the way which I command you this day, to go after other gods, which ye have not known. Deuteronomy 11:28*

**Strong's Concordance H518: "im"**

Here the word "**im**" means the "**curse will not come quickly**".

So, you cannot blame God nor can you blame the devil. God has called you for purity and He has called you to establish His kingdom.

*"Behold I set before you this day a blessing and a curse. If you obey the commandments of your God, the blessings shall come and they shall come quickly". That is "asher".*

*"If you will not obey the commandments of your God, the curse does not come quickly but it shall surely come". That is "im".*

So, you hold the keys to both kingdoms. You decide which kingdom moves in your life. You decide whether or not to remove the other kingdom that shouldn't be there.

**YOU DO IT AND GOD WILL WORK WITH YOU!**





<sup>4</sup>Always be full of joy in the Lord; I say it again, rejoice! <sup>5</sup>Let everyone see that you are unselfish and considerate in all you do. Remember that the Lord is coming soon. <sup>6</sup>Don't worry about anything; instead, pray about everything; tell God your needs, and don't forget to thank him for his answers. <sup>7</sup>If you do this, you will experience **God's peace**, which is far **more wonderful** than the **human mind can understand**. His **peace will keep your thoughts and your hearts quiet** and at rest as you **trust in Christ Jesus**.

<sup>8</sup>And now, brothers, as I close this letter, let me say this one more thing: **Fix your thoughts on what is true and good and right. Think about things that are pure and lovely, and dwell on the fine, good things in others.** Think about all you can praise God for and be glad about. <sup>9</sup>**Keep putting into practice all you learned** from me and saw me doing, and the God of peace will be with you.

<sup>10</sup>How grateful I am and how I praise the Lord that you are helping me again. I know you have always been anxious to send what you could, but for a while you didn't have the chance. <sup>11</sup>Not that I was ever in need, for I have learned how to get along happily whether I have much or little. <sup>12</sup>I know how to live on almost nothing or with everything. **I have learned the secret of contentment in every situation**, whether it be a **full stomach or hunger, plenty or want**; <sup>13</sup>for I can do everything God asks me to with the help of **Christ who gives me the strength and power**. <sup>14</sup>But even so, you have done right in helping me in my present

difficulty. <sup>18</sup>At the moment I have all I need—more than I need! I am generously supplied with the gifts you sent me when Epaphroditus came. They are a sweet-smelling sacrifice that pleases God well. <sup>19</sup>And it is he who will supply all your needs from his riches in glory because of what Christ Jesus has done for us. <sup>20</sup>Now unto God our Father be glory forever and ever. Amen.

Sincerely, Paul

**Philemon 4:4-18 - TLB**

### ***A Word from the Author***

*This book is not about me, it is all about Yahshua HaMashiach. If not for Him, I wonder what would have happened to me. With His kindness, longsuffering and indescribable love, He constantly drew me closer to Him, taught me how to pitch my tent with Him, as He is pitching His tent with Me. It is only when you allow the Holy Spirit to do His work in you, that something significant happens on the inside. The Ruach HaKodesh is a master in heart transplants, in sanctification, purification, holiness and making you whole again. When people the closest to you confesses with great astonishment, that you have changed and transformed for good - that is the final death of the old man and a new life in the spiritual man - then you realise: "How great is our God". YEHOVAH Elohim took me out of darkness, out of Babylon (sometimes with force), into the light, perfectly orchestrated my life into His image. There are no words in the human vocabulary to express my overwhelming thankfulness, joy, peace and love that I have received from Him. I could not even imagine in my wildest dreams, the good works He had in store for me! I am only His vessel. Therefore, all the glory to YEHOVAH Elohim, who is the author of this Book!*

*Dr. Anton du Plessis*

### **IN BONDAGE?**

"We were never in bondage to any man!" This was the reply of the Jewish people when Jesus told them He was from above, they were in the world and would die in their sins if they did not believe in Him. Their arrogance blinded them. They had been in bondage in Egypt for 430 years before Moses delivered them. Later, they went into slavery in Babylon for 70 years, and as Jesus was speaking to them, they were under the rule of the Roman Emperor. Yet, they believed they had never been in bondage to any man. Believers are often in debt, chronically sick, living in fear, and captive in bitterness and guilt, but still believe they are not in bondage.

Jesus came to set us free, if we would only believe in Him. He desires to deliver us, as He declared when He quoted from Isaiah 61 at the beginning of His Ministry.

*The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, and he has anointed me to be hope for the poor, freedom for the brokenhearted, and new eyes for the blind, and to preach to prisoners, 'You are set free!' I have come to share the message of Jubilee, for the time of God's great acceptance has begun. Luke 4:18-19 TPT*

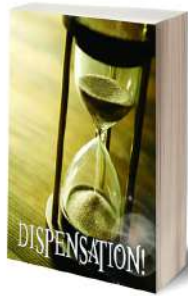
What a wonderful promise from Jesus that He was the fulfilment of Old Testament prophecies when He said:

*Today this Scripture is fulfilled in your ears. Luke 4:21 MKJV*



[www.berashithministry.co.za](http://www.berashithministry.co.za)

## Books Available



**Dispensation**



**The Writing is on the Wall**



**The Gift of Giving**

[www.TheLightTowers.co.za](http://www.TheLightTowers.co.za)



*"I am the Bright Morning Star -  
Surely I come quickly"*  
Rev 22:16, 20